Sheila Dignen BBC **WORKBOOK**

See the Wider picture



The eccentric Cadillac Ranch, Amarillo, Texas, USA

Three artists built Cadillac Ranch in 1974 beside the famous Route 66. They created the installation by half-burying 10 old Cadillacs nose down in the ground. The cars are placed at the same angle as the face of the Great Pyramid of Giza in Egypt. You can add your own graffiti, but make sure you take a photo because it will soon be painted over by someone else.

What would you paint?

CONTENTS

Star	ter unit Weld	come to Woodley Bridge	Unit	5 (continued)	The big match!
0.1	1,1 - 6,0 pp 1,52 - 74	2	5.6	Speaking	60
0.2		3	5.7	Writing	61
0.3		4	5.8	Self-assessment	62
0.4		5	5.9	Self-check	63
Unit	1	That's my world!	BBC (Culture	64
1.1	Vocabulary	6	Unit	6	See the world!
1.2	Grammar	8	6.1	Vocabulary	66
1.3	Reading and Vocabulary	9	6.2	Grammar	68
.4	Grammar	10	6.3	Reading and Vocabulary	69
1.5	Listening and Vocabulary	11	6.4	Grammar	70
.6	Speaking	12	6.5	Listening and Vocabulary	71
.7	Writing	13	6.6	Speaking	72
.8	Self-assessment	14	6.7	English in Use	73
.9	Self-check	15	6.8	Self-assessment	74
BC (Culture	16	6.9	Self-check	75
Init	2	Wild nature		Culture	76
-			Unit	7	Getting to know you
1.1	Vocabulary	18	E SEE		
.2	Grammar	20	7.1	Vocabulary	78
.3	Reading and Vocabulary	21	7.2	Grammar	80
.4	Grammar	22	7.3	Reading and Vocabulary	81
2.5	Listening and Vocabulary		7.4	Grammar	82
2.6	Speaking	24	7.5	Listening and Vocabulary	83
.7	English in Use	25	7.6	Speaking	84
8.2	Self-assessment	26	7.7	Writing	85
.9	Self-check	27	7.8	Self-assessment	86
BC (Culture	28	7.9	Self-check	87
nit	3	The taste test		Culture	88
3.1	Vocabulary	30	Unit	8	No time for crime
.2	Grammar	32	8.1	Vocabulary	90
.3	Reading and Vocabulary	33	8.2	Grammar	92
.4	Grammar	34	8.3	Reading and Vocabulary	93
.5	Listening and Vocabulary		8.4	Grammar	94
.6	Speaking	36	8.5	Listening and Vocabulary	95
3.7	Writing	37	8.6	Speaking	96
8.	Self-assessment	38	8.7	English in Use	97
.9	Self-check	39	8.8	Self-assessment	98
BC (Culture	40	8.9	Self-check	99
nit	4	Curtain up!	BBC	Culture	100
.1	Vocabulary	42	Unit	9	Think outside the box
.2	Grammar	44	9.1	Vocabulary	102
.3	Reading and Vocabulary	45	9.2	Grammar	104
.4	Grammar	46	9.3	Reading and Vocabulary	105
.5	Listening and Vocabulary	47	9.4	Grammar	106
.6	Speaking	48	9.5	Listening and Vocabulary	107
1.7	English in Use	49	9.6	Speaking	108
8.	Self-assessment	50	9.7	Writing	109
1.9	Self-check	51	9.8	Self-assessment	110
BBC	Culture	. 52	9.9	Self-check	111
Jnit	5	The big match!	BBC	Culture	112
-	Vocabulary	54			
.1	Grammar	56	1	time 1	114
				time 2	118
5.2	Reading and Vocabulary	57			
5.1 5.2 5.3 5.4	Reading and Vocabulary Grammar	57 58	Exam	n time 3 checks answer key	122 126



Activities and interests; Likes and dislikes; Home and furniture; *There is/are* with *some/any*; Possessive adjectives and possessive 's

Welcome to	
Woodley	
Bridge	

VOCABULARY

Activities and interests | Home and furniture | Jobs | Clothes and accessories | Countries and languages

GRAMMAR

There is/are with some/any | Possessive adjectives and possessive 's | Present Simple with adverbs of frequency | Present Continuous | was/were; there was/were | Past Simple: regular verbs

SPEAKING

Likes and dislikes | Talking about feelings

1	M	atch 1–5 with a–e to make se	ntences.
	1	c I don't like doing	a books.
	2	We love going	b to the cinema.
	3	Do you like listening	c nothing it's boring!
	4	I don't like reading	d photos, especially family
	5	My dad likes taking	photos.
			e to music?
2		omplete the sentences with the	ne words below. There are two
	I	can can't doesn't don't lik	es leve stand
	1	I <u>love</u> going shopping with m I have money to spend.	y friends, especially when
	2	Jake watching films at to the cinema.	home, but I prefer going
	3	I can't waiting for peo	ple. It really annoys me!
	4	My dad mind giving m	
	5		ing to school. He always gets
3	W	rite the correct home and fur	niture word for each definition.
	1	You sit in this to wash yourself	f. b ath
	2	You lie on this to sleep. b	
	3	This is made of glass, so you o	can see through it. w
	4	You eat meals in this room. d	
	5	You can see yourself if you lo	ok in this. m
4	CI	hoose the correct option.	
	1	There's/ There are a big table	e in the dining room.
			thes on the floor in my bedroom.
	3	There are some / any lovely fl	owers in the garden.
	4	There aren't some / any towe	ls in the bathroom.
	5	There isn't / aren't a mirror in	the dining room.
5		omplete the second sentence est sentence. Use possessive a	so that it means the same as the djectives or the possessive 's.
	1	These shoes belong to Jack.	
		These are Jack's shoes.	
	2	This car belongs to my paren	ts.
		This is car.	
	3	Does this bag belong to you?	
		Is thisbag?	
	4	This garden belongs to us.	
		This is garden.	
	5	That jacket belongs to Laura	's dad.
		That is jacket.	



1 Look at the pictures and complete the jobs.





3 h



2 :



4 ---



5 f

6 n

2 Order the words to make sentences.

- 1 usually / lunch / have / I / at one o'clock I usually have lunch at one o'clock.
- 2 always / late / Martha / is
- 3 go/1/to school/sometimes/by bus
- 4 Sara / often / tired / is
- 5 never / Paul / his homework / does
- 6 cooks / dinner / my dad / usually / for the family

3 Read the dialogue. Choose the correct option.

Sam: Where 1 you live / do you live,

Liam?

Liam: 1 ² live / lives in the city centre.

My dad ³ work / works in a bank.

Sam: ⁴Do / Does your mum have

a job too?

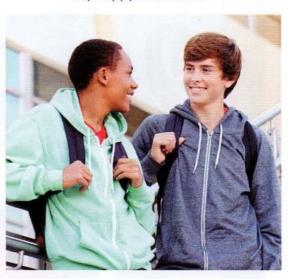
Liam: Yes, she ⁵do / does. She's a teacher, but she ⁶not work / doesn't work every day.

Sam: ⁷She teach / Does she teach at

your school?

Liam: No, she $^8doesn't/don't$, and I'm

very happy about that!



4 WORD FRIENDS Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

1 I usually ____ my homework after dinner.

a have

(**b**) do

b go

c get

2 Do you ____ a shower every morning?

a get

c have

3 When do you usually _____ your friends?

a see

b get

c have

4 I often ____ up late at the weekend.

a go

b get

c do

5 We always ____ dinner at eight o'clock.

a go

b have

c get up

6 We don't school on Saturday or Sunday.

a go

b go at

c go to



Look at the pictures. Order the letters below and write the words for clothes and accessories.

cakite inrreags Ilsabeab pac odoieh tcahw T-hitsr





1 jacket





3



5

2 Complete the sentences with the Present Continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 Carla is having (have) a shower at the moment. Can you call back in ten minutes?
- 2 I can't talk to you now. I_ (do) my homework.
- 3 My sisters aren't here this weekend. They (visit) some friends in London.
- (not wear) school uniform 4 We today because it's Saturday!
- 5 Martin (not play) football at the moment. He (watch) TV.
- 6 My parents_ (not work) today. (sit) in the garden. They.

3 Read the dialogues. Choose the correct option.

A

A: Hi, Matt. What are you doing/ are you do?

B: 21'm playing / I playing a computer game, but 31 don't doing / I'm not doing very well. It's really difficult.

A: Hi, Laura. Where's Mark? 41s he / Is sleeping?

B: No, he ⁵aren't / isn't. He's ⁶watch / watching a film in his bedroom.

A: ⁷Are / Do you feeling better today, Cara?

B: Yes, I ⁸do / am, thanks. ⁹I feeling / I'm feeling much better.

4 How is each person feeling? Choose the correct answers.

It's the first day of my holiday! The weather's lovely and I want to do lots of different things.

1 a sad

(b) excited

c nervous

All my friends are away this weekend. It's raining outside and there's nothing to do!

2 a bored

b shocked

c excited

I don't like it when my sister wears my clothes. She never asks me first!

3 a worried

b relaxed

c irritated

I've got a Maths test tomorrow. The tests are always really difficult, so I never do very well.

4 a nervous

b tired

c relaxed

I always go to bed late, so I never get much sleep. I want to sleep now!

5 a excited

b shocked

c tired

It's Saturday morning and I haven't got any homework this weekend! I wonder what's on TV.

6 a relaxed

b frightened c annoyed



Countries and languages; was/were; there was/were; Past Simple: regular verbs

	omplet anguage		ntence	es with	n words f	or countries and	4	Complete the sentences with the Past Simple form of the verbs below.
1	Jacek	is from	Polano	, so h	e speaks	Polish.		I live not enter not also
					5	can speak		live not enjoy not play not rain study want
						eaks Italian.		1 I <u>didn't enjoy</u> the concert last weekend – it was terrible!
					_	to speak		
5	French		n Paris	s, In		_, so she can speak		2 My parents in New
4			Dortug	مم امر	she spee	alsa		York when they were younger. 3 Alex football
						aks		yesterday because he was ill.
					•			
8		ten go o		day to	Spain, se	o we're learning to		4 My mum French at university.
	speak		•					5 My uncle to be
2 c	hoose t	he corre	ect an	swers				a pop singer when he was younger.
1		lo than fifty		people	e at the p	party last night -		6 We were lucky because it when we were on
		and the second second second second		There	e were	c There was		holiday.
2					ool yester		_	
_						c weren't	5	Make questions and short answers
_								in the Past Simple.
3						ult last term.		1 you / like / your presents? ✓
	a was					c were		A: Did you like your presents?
4						your holiday?		B: Yes, I did.
	a We	re	b	Was	there	c Was		2 your parents / help / you / with your
5		n	nany p	eople	in the re	estaurant last night.		homework? X
	a The	ere wasn	t b	There	e weren't	c Weren't		A:
6		a	good	film c	n at the	cinema last night?		B:
			-			c Were there		3 she / invite / all her friends / to the party? ✓
3 F	ind the	Past Sim	ple fo	rm of	the verb	s in the word		A:
S	earch. V	Vrite the	m nex	t to th	ne verbs.			B:
								4 the train / arrive / on time? X
(W O F	R K E	D) S	S M	P S			A:
	E T F	RIE	D 1	ГΙ	CN			B:
	D B F	LC	0 0) K	E D		6	Complete the questions with the
	R A E	3 I A	N F	Р	I S			phrases below.
	LIF	(E D	R F	P L	LT			•
	I A A	A N R	CE	- Δ	ıu			how did you run what did you watch
	V L H		200) Y	N D			when did you visit where did Anna live
								who did Karl invite why did they play
	EN.	1 O Y) E	GI			1 What did you watch at the cinema
	DEC	3 B R	R E	E D	E E			last night?
L	PLA	NN	E [) E	Y D			2 tennis in the rain?
,	work	wa da -	,		4			3 before she moved
1	work	worked			6 enj			to London?
2					7 stu			4 to his party?
<u>م</u>	live				8 pla 9 sto			5 a whole marathon?
5					10 pla			6 New York? Was it
3	LIY				io più	U1		last year?

last year?



That's my

world!

Lifestyle | Everyday technology | Adjectives of opinion | Time

Present Simple, Present Continuous and state verbs | Verb + -ing / verb +

VOCABULARY

GRAMMAR

to-infinitive

READING Multiple choice

LISTENING

VOCABULARY

Lifestyle

I can talk about everyday technology.

1 Look at the pictures and complete the words.





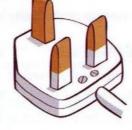


1 tablet

2 b

3 e_____







4 s

5 p

6 s_____





7 c_

8 c_____

SPEAKING Making and re

Making and responding to suggestions

Listening for gist | True/False

WRITING

A description

BBC CULTURE

Do smartphones make you smarter?

2 Write the correct word for each definition. Use the words in Exercise 1.

- 1 It's a small, flat computer you can hold in your hands. tablet
- 2 You put this inside a camera or other piece of technology to make it work.
- 3 It's a piece of wire to join things together.
- 4 You use this to take a photo of yourself.
- 5 You use these to listen to music so that no one else can hear.
- 6 You push this into the wall to connect to the power supply.
- 7 You use this to put more electricity into your phone.
- 8 This is the part of a device where the sound comes out.

3 word FRIENDS Choose the correct option.

- 1 go/make online
- 2 send / listen to music
- 3 play / read e-books
- 4 film / listen a video
- 5 download / text friends
- 6 upload / text pictures

	chat	do	ownl	oad	g	ame	s I	ister	n m	ake		
		age	s (onlin					sho		text	
1	l usu					afte	er di	inne	er an	d _		
2									Isic p			ar
3		noli	day	, I u	sua	lly _			e-b			
4	20	my	/ ph	one	e to	_		_ r	ny fri n.	end	ls or	
5	I tak	e a	lot	of p	hot	os, t	ther	n I_	frien		them	n sc
6			usio	c, sc	lw	atch	nal	lot o	of mu	usic		
	day		;	'd li	ke t	0_			a vi	deo	one	
	uuy	9										
wr	Find ite th					ves	in tl	ne v	vord	sec	irch	an
A	M	Α	Z	1	N	G	Α	Р	S			
W	M	Z	Α	X	G	S	1	E	N			
Е	В	1	F	U	Ν	Ν	Υ	R	U			
S	Α	В	1	Α	Ν	0	T	F	S			
0	F	0	S	В	R	K	Е	E	Е			
Μ	В	R	N	R	C	L	C	C	F			
E	Z	1	С	0	0	L	Н	T	U			
F	Α	N	Р	W	1	Н	E	Χ	L			
D	Е	G	В	R	R	E	0	Ε	Н			
А	Α	Ε	٧	N	0	1	S	Υ	N			
1	amo	izi	ng				5	a	_		е	
2	f		y				6	b			g	
3	c n						7				_ t	

d (lod-shfaioend).

6 I hate this music - it's t

7		Choose that characters		djective tha	t do	oes NOT fit in
	1	I don't like th a terrible	The state of the state of			
	2	E-books are		beca		
		and easy to a brilliant		•	С	noisy
	3	My old phone a new one.	e is	, b	ut I'	d like to get
		a awesome	b	OK	С	all right
	4	Thank you fo surprise!	r the	e present. W	hat	a
		a nice	b	disgusting	С	lovely
	5	I love your ne	ew to	ablet. It's		_!
		a awful	b	amazing	С	awesome
	6	I like Sara, bu			vhy :	she wears
		a strange	b	noisy	С	old- fashioned
	7	He's such a _ makes me la			- he	always
				funny	С	useful
8	W	ord in each go		he online p	rofil	e with one
	El	la Hopki	ns			
	A	bout me				
		really ¹ into te	chno	ology. I alwa	vs h	nave
	my	tablet with me	e so	I can ²		
		line whenever	I wo			or
	4	tening ³	nas	music. I co		10
	int	ernet, and I've				
	5	, s	olc	an listen on t	he l	
		my way to sch				
	gc 6	ood camera. I c		take photos vith my friend		

I haven't got a 7_

a lot of instant 8

10old-

e (errtileb)!

and I sometimes 9

I don't often take photos of myself. I send

not very often. My brother loves games, but he only likes really modern ones, not

ones.

stick though -

games, but

to my friends

GRAMMAR

Present Simple, Present Continuous and state verbs

I can use different tenses to talk about the present.

1		Choose the correct option. Then mark the
•	se	ntences PS (Present Simple) or PC (Present
		ontinuous).
	1	Joe's do / doing some tricks on his bike at the moment. PC
	2	
	2	We aren't / don't often go to the cinema.
	J	Sara doesn't / isn't wearing her helmet today.
	4	My dad never travels / travelling by bus.
	5	Are / Do you usually do your homework after dinner?
	6	What do / are you doing here?
2	•	Match questions 1–6 with answers a–f.
	1	c Are you enjoying the film?
	2	Does your uncle live in London?
	3	Do you go online every day?
	4	Are they making a film?
	5	Is Jack practising on his skateboard?
	6	Do your friends play in a band?
	a	Yes, I do. I chat with friends online every evening.
	b	No, they aren't. They're just taking some photos.
	С	Yes, I am. It's brilliant!
	d	Yes, they do, and they're awesome!
	е	No, he isn't. He's playing tennis.
	f	No, he doesn't. He lives in Manchester.
3	fo	Complete the sentences with the Present Simple rm of the verbs below.
	I	feel know not understand think want
	1	I know Kate very well – she's my best friend.
	2	I'm going home because Iill.
	3	I what you're saying. Can you repeat it,
		please?
	4	My brother to buy a new camera.
	5	I she's from France, but I'm not sure.
4	or	Complete the sentences with the Present Simple Present Continuous form of the verbs in brackets.
	1	l (usually/take) photos on my phone, but today l (use) my camera.
	2	Jez (learn) the guitar at the moment because he (want) to be in a band.
	3	I (try) to text Anna now because
	5	I (need) to speak to her.
	4	We (usually/cycle) to school, but it
	(T	(rain) today, so we (go)
		by bus.
	5	l (look) for my charger. l
	(100)	(not know) where I left it.

5 Read the dialogues. Choose the correct option.

A

- A: Hi. What ¹ are you doing / do you do?
- B: ²I try / I'm trying to take a selfie while I'm on my skateboard, but ³I think / I'm thinking it's impossible! ⁴I fall off / I'm falling off every time I try!

B

- A: ⁵Do you like / Are you liking the new James Bond game?
- B: Yes, I ⁶am / do. But ⁷I don't spend / I'm not spending much time on computer games at the moment because ⁸I work / I'm working hard for my exams.

C

- A: Hi! Are those your new earphones? What ⁹do you listen / are you listening to?
- B: That new band, The Feds. ¹⁰Do you know / Are you knowing them?
- 6 Complete the email with the Present Simple or Present Continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

000		
Hi Jack,	100	3 7 5 2
How are you? I ¹ uncle in Birmingl there's a big cor uncle ² year. You ³	nam this week mputer games (come) to th (know	kend because s show here. My nis event every) I ⁴
(love) games an every day at hor for me. At the ma a big hall with lo	ne, so this is a oment, I ⁶	(sit) in
earphones so I of the game really a difficult game very well! OK, I k (not like) compu	well. The only and I ⁹ now you ¹⁰ ter games be think) they're o	ar) special ne sounds in problem is it's (not do) cause you all boring, but
What 12 Write and tell me	(you/do)	this weekend?
Paul		





I can find specific detail in an article and talk about unusual objects.

Gadget World

Hundreds of brilliant gadgets at amazing prices!

Read about our three top gadgets this month.

The UE Boom 2 is a small speaker with a really big sound! It's about the size of a can of drink, so you can carry it with you easily and enjoy listening to your music. It's round, so the sound comes out in all directions. It's powerful enough to fill a large room with music, so you can have a party wherever you are! It's made of strong plastic, so it's OK if you drop it and it's also waterproof, so you can use it at the beach or in the shower. And the battery lasts for fifteen hours.

Do you sometimes forget to charge your phone? Well, why not buy some EnSoles? They look like normal insoles, but they use the power that you make when you're walking to charge your phone. Just put the Ensoles in your shoes, plug your phone cable into your shoe and you can chat or text while you walk. They're really cool, and a very useful gadget.

Taking selfies is fun, but sometimes you'd like your selfie stick to be just a little bit longer. Well, the Nixie is the perfect gadget for you! It's a camera that flies! You wear it on your arm like a watch, so it's easy to carry. When you're ready to take a photo, you let it go and it flies up into the air. It knows where you are and it can follow you to take some awesome photos. It then comes back down, you catch it and put it back on your arm. Simple! The Nixie isn't available to buy yet, but you can put your name on the list to get one as soon as they're on sale.







1	Read the text.	Match	gadgets	1-3 with	photos	A-C.
	a section of the contract		5 5			

1 EnSoles UE Boom 2 Nixie

2 Read the text again. Choose the correct answers.

- 1 You can only use the UE Boom 2 speaker inside a room.
 - c Doesn't say a True b False
- 2 The UE Boom 2 speaker doesn't break easily.
 - a True b False c Doesn't say
- 3 The EnSoles are expensive.

a True

- a True b False c Doesn't say
- 4 The Ensoles use power from the sun to charge your phone.

c Doesn't say

- 5 The Nixie camera is comfortable to wear.
 - a True b False c Doesn't say

b False

- 6 You can't buy a Nixie at the moment.
 - b False a True c Doesn't say

- 3 Complete the sentences with the words below from the text.
 - can easy lasts normal size
 - 1 This gadget is cheap and to use.
 - 2 This camera is about the of a watch, so it's very small.
 - 3 With these earphones you listen to music in the shower.
 - 4 It looks like a but in fact, it's also a computer.
 - 5 One problem with this phone is that the battery only for a few hours.

GRAMMAR

Verb + ing / verb + to-infinitive

I can use verb constructions with to-infinitives and -ing forms.

00	Order the words to make ntences.	4 Find and correct the mistakes in the sentences. One sentence is correct.
	enjoy / making / I / pizza I enjoy making pizza.	 My brother often chooses watching films on his tablet. My brother often chooses to watch films on his tablet.
2	forget / sometimes / to / do / I / my homework	2 I can't stand to listen to that awful music!
3	hoping / he's / pass / his exams / to	3 Hurry up – I hate being late!
4	misses / seeing / she / her cousins	4 I hope my dad agrees paying for our tickets.
5	I / love / to / would / come / to the party	5 I'm really looking forward to see that film.
6	always / he / his room / cleaning / avoids	5
2 @	Match 1–6 with a–f to make entences.	be choose download film get make practise ride see visit
1	c I'm looking forward	
2	Sonia can't	I love ¹ filming videos of me and my friends. We all enjoy
3	I don't	our BMX bikes, and some of the tricks we
4	I would like	can do look great when you film them. I always try
5	Dan is very good	interesting places for the videos – next
6	Please stop	month we're planning ⁴ a big park in London
		to make a film there. I've asked all my friends
a	mind helping with the party.	5 their tricks so they can do them really well.
b	making so much noise!	I'm really looking forward to 6 the results.
C	to seeing you.	My friends all tell me I'm quite good at ⁷
d	1 7 0 0	videos. I wouldn't mind ⁸ a job with
	to go to New York.	a film company when I'm older. I'd love 9
f	stand cooking.	a famous film director one day!
3 6	Complete the sentences with the prrect form of the verbs in brackets.	Click here if you want 10 some of my videos and watch them. I hope you enjoy them!
1	My grandma is trying <u>to learn</u> (learn) how to upload pictures.	
2	Why don't you come to my house when you finish (do) your homework?	6 Complete the sentences with the words below. Then match sentences
3	We're planning (go) to France in the summer holidays.	1–3 with meanings a–c.
4	Are you interested in (see) the new James Bond film?	really taking upside
5	Mark never offers (do) the washing up!	1
6	My sister sometimes asks me (help) her with her homework.	 3 It's annoying. a The top is at the bottom. b It's making me feel angry. c I'm spending a lot of time on it.

1.5

LISTENING and VOCABULARY

Could you live without technology?

5 🛈 03 Listen to the second part of the

I can identify specific detail in a radio programme and talk about using technology.

2	1 2 3 4 5	I get up for school at 7 a.m. / p.m. There are sixty seconds in a minute / an hour. I often see my friends in / at the weekend. I usually text my grandma once / once time a week. My brother usually gets up late at / on Sundays.								
2	2 3 4 5	There are sixty seconds in a minute / an hour. I often see my friends in / at the weekend. I usually text my grandma once / once time a week. My brother usually gets up late at / on								
2	4 5	I often see my friends in / at the weekend. I usually text my grandma once / once time a week. My brother usually gets up late at / on								
2	4 5	I usually text my grandma once / once time a week. My brother usually gets up late at / on								
2	5	a week. My brother usually gets up late at / on								
2		My brother usually gets up late at / on								
2										
2	6									
2		I sometimes watch TV <i>in / on</i> the evening.								
	Match 1-6 with a-f to make sentences.									
	1	We have our lunch in the canteen								
	2	☐ The show is on TV three								
	3	3 My brother sometimes goes to bed at								
	4									
	5	I only see my grandparents twice								
	6	I sometimes go shopping on								
	a	a Saturday. d midnight.								
	b	the afternoon. e a year.								
	С	times a week. f at lunch time.								
3		ow often do you do these things? Write								
	se 1	text friends I text friends every day.								
		text friends								
	1	text friends I text friends every day.								
	1	text friends I text friends every day. chat with friends								
	1 2 3	text friends I text friends every day. chat with friends find information online								
	1 2 3 4	text friends I text friends every day. chat with friends find information online download songs								
	1 2 3 4 5	text friends I text friends every day. chat with friends find information online download songs listen to the radio								

	programme. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).
	1 Isla is often bored in the evenings because she can't chat with her friends
	2 Isla is spending more time on her homework now.
	3 Ben can't listen to music at the moment
	4 Ben doesn't like any of his parents' musi
	5 Sara is watching more TV because she can't go online.
	6 Isla is enjoying having printed photos.
6	04 Complete what Isla says with the words below. Listen and check. boring online terrible usually with
	I'm finding it really difficult. I
	text my friends and chat ² them
	a lot, but of course, now I can't do that. It's
	OK during the day, but the evenings are a bit
	3 . And the worst thing is trying to
	do homework. I can't go ⁴ to
	find information and that's ⁵ !
	Books are OK, but it's much slower without
	the internet.

- a some people who are trying some new technology for a month
- **b** some people who are not using technology for a month



How can we have fun if no one can see what we're doing?



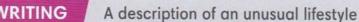
2

3

I can make and respond to suggestions.

		ete the response rds below.	s in the dialogues with	•	
C	ool	great rather su	ure why		
1 4	A:	Why don't you ad the video?	ld some music to	Y	TAN
B	3:	Yes, great idea.			A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A
2 /	A :	You could buy a l	better camera.	-35	700
E	3:	I'd n	ot. They're very		
		expensive!		4 🕣	05 Complete the dialogue with sentence
1	\ :	The second second control of the second seco	e your brother's video	a-e.	Listen and check.
		camera?	LI LO IN IN	Joe:	Right, we want to film a video. What's th
E	3:		He doesn't like		best idea?
		people using his	A VOTES VAN THE	Ann:	¹c
7.2		Yes,	eo about football. not?	Joe:	Hmm, I'm not sure. I can't do many trick on my skateboard. I think it might be
5 /	۹:	Shall we go to the	e park?	Ann:	boring. OK. Well, shall we make a video about
E	3:	OK,	- Data Caranta	Ann:	dancing? I can ask some of my friends.
A/rid		ha raspansas fra	m Exercise 1 in the		Tara's a really good dancer.
		t column.	II Exercise I in the	Joe:	2
				Ann:	Well, we could make a funny video abou
Aco	сер	ting a suggestion	Rejecting a suggestion		your cat.
	Ve	es, great idea.	Transfer and Line (1997)	Joe:	3
	16	s, great idea.		Ann:	Hmm, but he might not do anything fun in front of the camera.
-				Joe:	4
_				Ann:	With you playing the guitar?
Mat	tch	suggestions 1-5	with responses a-e.	Joe:	Yes.
	c		about skateboarding.	Ann:	
2			e camera on your	Joe: Ann:	Cool! And we can ask Tom to sing. Great! Let's do that!
3		Let's go into town	now.		es, why not? He's always doing funny thing
1	Ħ		sk someone to help you?		d rather not. I'd prefer to make a funny vide
5		Shall we meet at			ell, what about making a video about ateboarding?
a 1	'n	not sure. It doesn'	't take very good photos.		nat's a great idea. I can play the drums, to
		rather not. I want	Parties and the property of the parties of the part		nat's true. Why don't we make a music vide
0 (Gro	eat idea! We're bo	th really good at it!		
d (OK	, cool. See you the	en.	5 M	atch sentences 1–3 with
9 1	Wh	y not? We might n	neet some friends there.	19770 (1880)	esponses a-c. class
				1	Look, this is my
					new tablet.
				2	Let's have pizza for lunch.
				3	☐ That's it! I'm leaving!
				а	Come back!
				L	This is so cool

c Good idea. That's my favourite!



1.7 WRITING

I can describe places and lifestyles.

1	Complete Matt's article for his school magazin					
	with the words below.					

evening got home usually view weekdays

A 4 -		200		176 1	
NAV	/ IIIn	1101	121	lifest	1/10
IVI		u_{2}	ICIL	111651	VIE
	All the same of th				7 6

by Matt Thompson

Most people live in a house or flat, but my home is in a boat. I always have a 2_ It's 3 three bedrooms and a small living area. There's a kitchen and a bathroom too. Although it's small, it's warm and comfortable. We haven't got much technology. However, I've got a tablet in case I want to go online to chat with friends or watch films in the 4_ I live with my parents and my sister. We stay in one place during school time. I get up early on 6 because I help look after the boat. We don't have a car, so I always walk to school. In the school holidays, we travel around. I like this lifestyle because I visit interesting places. Also, I meet lots of different



people - as well as my school friends, I've got

friends all over the country!

2	Read the text again. Mark the sentences T (t	true
	or F (false).	

1 [Matt can't use the internet on his boat
2	Four people live on Matt's boat.
3	Matt and his family never stay in one place for more than a few weeks.
4	Matt enjoys his lifestyle.

3	Match paragraphs	1-2 in the text with
	topics a-b.	

a [description of family and lifestyle
b [description of home

- 4 Look at the words in bold in the text. Then choose the correct option.
 - 1 My home isn't very big. Although / However I enjoy living in it.
 - 2 I meet lots of interesting people, so / because I never get bored.
 - 3 There's an extra bed in the living area as well as / in case we want to invite friends to stay.
 - 4 There's a living area inside the boat and there's space outside as well as / too.
 - 5 Although / However my sister likes our lifestyle, she would prefer to live in a house.
 - 6 Our lifestyle isn't expensive. Too / Also, it's good for the environment.
- **5** Complete Anna's notes about her home and lifestyle with the words below.

bedrooms camper van get up lifestyle morning never tablet university

0		

- · home: modern 1camper van
- rooms: two ² , small kitchen and shower room
- small, quite comfortable, sometimes cold in the
- TV; no internet connection, but have a
 I can use in cafés

FAMILY AND LIFESTYLE

- · mum, dad and sister
- usually ⁵ early help with food and jobs
- 6 go to school study with mum and dad
- want to go to ⁷ one day
- · enjoy the way we live travel all over the world
- interesting ⁸ meet lots of people
- **6** Write a description of Anna's home and lifestyle. Follow the instructions below.
 - 1 Use the text in Exercise 1 as a model.
 - 2 Write two paragraphs:
 - paragraph 1: Anna's home
 - · paragraph 2: Anna's family and lifestyle.
 - 3 Use connectors and time expressions.
 - 4 Use the Present Simple.



SELF-ASSESSMENT

For each learning objective, tick (/) the box that best matches your ability.

co = I understand and can help a friend.

= I understand but have some questions.

c = I understand and can do it by myself.

= I do not understand.

		\odot	\odot	8	88	Need help?	Now try
1.1	Vocabulary					Students' Book pp. 10–11 Workbook pp. 6–7	Ex. 1-2, p. 15
1.2	Grammar					Students' Book p. 12 Workbook p. 8	Ex. 3-4, p. 15
1.3	Reading	Maller				Students' Book p. 13 Workbook p. 9	
1.4	Grammar					Students' Book p. 14 Workbook p. 10	Ex. 5, p. 15
1.5	Listening	routoment rout step				Students' Book p. 15 Workbook p. 11	
1.6	Speaking	B) 444	estile.			Students' Book p. 16 Workbook p. 12	Ex. 6, p. 15
1.7	Writing					Students' Book p. 17 Workbook p. 13	

- 1.1 I can talk about everyday technology.
- 1.2 I can use different tenses to talk about the present.
- 1.3 I can find specific detail in an article and talk about unusual objects.
- 1.4 I can use verb constructions with to-infinitives and -ing forms.
- 1.5 I can identify specific detail in a radio programme and talk about using technology.
- 1.6 I can make and respond to suggestions.
- 1.7 I can describe places and lifestyles.

What can you remember from this unit?

New words I learned (the words you most want to remember from this unit)	Expressions and phrases I liked (any expressions or phrases you think sound nice, useful or funny)	English I heard or read outside class (e.g. from websites, books, adverts, films, music)
	Exercise 6	



SELF-CHECK

Vocabulary

	Vocabulary	4	4 Complete the questions with the Present Simple or Present Continuous form of the verbs in						
1	Complete the words in the sentences.					olete the short answers.			
	1 My phone has no power – I need to find my		1	A:		(you/often/read)			
	c				e-books?				
	2 This s is great for			B:	No, I				
	taking photos of yourself.		2	A:	the second	(Jamie/listen) to			
	3 Do you usually s photos with your				music at the	moment?			
	friends online?			B:	Yes, he	. He's upstairs in his			
	4 I love music, so I d a lot of				room.				
	songs.		3	A:	-	(you/think) it's			
	5 I hate that TV show – it's a !				a good film?				
	6 It's really hot and sunny today – it's a			B:	Yes, I	. It's brilliant!			
	p day to go to the beach!		4	A:		(your friends/			
0					make) a vide	o today?			
2	Complete the sentences with the words below.			B:	Yes, they	. It's a music video.			
	There is one extra word.		5	A:		(you/do) your			
	break evening made twice ugly				homework rig	ght now?			
	useful weekend			B:	No, I	. I'm too tired!			
			6	A:		(your friends/			
	1 I go swimming a week, on					mber) your birthday?			
	Wednesdays and Fridays.			B:	No, they	. It's very annoying!			
	2 This is a very gadget. I'd really				20				
	like one.			5 Choose the correct option.					
	3 I don't like this bag - it looks		1	Hu	rry up - I can't	stand to be / being late!			
	4 Is that bag of plastic?					ers to pay / paying for			
	5 At eleven o'clock our lessons stop because it's time.			an	ything.				
	6 I often listen to music in the		3			I'm trying to listen / listening			
	o Torter lister to masic in the				music.				
	Grammar		4		parents allow e at the weeke	me to stay up / staying up nd.			
2	Complete the control of with the Decemb		5	It's	OK - I don't m	aind to wait / waiting for you.			
3	Complete the sentences with the Present Simple or Present Continuous form of the verbs		6	Mil	ke is hoping to	go / going to art college.			
	in brackets.		Sp	eak	ing language	practice Practice			
	Can you wait a minute? I (chat) with my friends at the moment.	_	_		1	211 11 11			
		0			piete the dialo	gue with one word in each			
	2 I (not often/watch) films on			ap.					
	my tablet - I prefer a bigger screen.		A			organise something for			
	3 My uncle (live) near the beach.				ana's birthday?				
	beach.		B	Yes	s, great ²				

(not like) her music. I think

(not rain) now, so we can

(not want) to come to

it's boring!

go out.

the party.

5 It_

6 Jake

have a party.

expensive. 5

at my house?

a pizza?

B: I'd rather 6

pizza. A: OK, well, 7_

B: Yes, why 8 that.

A: I'm not 4

. A party's quite

?9

don't we go for

. I don't really like

about a film night

1 Match the words below with the pictures.

chat with friends play games send messages share photos watch videos









5

3

2 Match 1–4 with a–d to make word friends.

	7		
1 (d video	а	messages
2	social	b	device
3	instant	С	media
4	digital	d	clip

- 3 Complete the sentences with the word friends in Exercise 2. Then tick (✓) the sentences that are true for you. Change the other sentences to make them true for you.
 - I use a lot of social media: Twitter, Facebook, Instagram ...
 I have a great new ______: my tablet!
 I like sending ______ when I'm working on my computer. It's very convenient.
 - 4 I spend a lot time watching _____ on YouTube.
 I'm almost an addict!

4 Choose the correct option.

- 1 Korean children are good at seeing /solving problems together.
- 2 We receive / require information in different ways these days.
- 3 You can access / acquire the internet with many different devices.
- 4 The internet is challenging / transforming society.
- 5 If you take / touch the screen, some new information appears.
- 6 If you switch / click on the link, a new page opens.

Make sentences using verb + toinfinitive or verb + -ing.

- 1 I / not / plan / solve / the problem today
 I'm not planning to solve the
 - problem today.
- 2 I / prefer / access / the internet at home
- 3 the internet / good at / transform / society
- 4 you / can practise / touch / the screen now
- 5 I would like / receive / more information online
- 6 try/click/on that link

6 Complete the definitions with the adjectives below.

anxious	funny	proficient
smart	superfici	al

- 1 Someone or something that you makes you laugh is *funny*.
- 2 Someone or something that is intelligent is _____.
- 3 Something that is not meaningful or complete is ______.
- 4 Someone who is very worried is
- 5 Someone who is very good at something is _____.
- 7 Which of the adjectives in Exercise 6 have a positive meaning? Which have a negative meaning? Write P or N.



8 Read the video script. Underline any words or phrases you don't know and translate them into your language.

Addicted to screens

ı	P	a	٠	
		_		

How long do you spend online every day? Is this increasing at the moment? And when you're online, what do you do there – chat with friends, listen to music, watch videos, play games,

- s send messages? Can you do them all at the same time?
 The internet is transforming our society too. It has a huge impact on culture, politics and business.
 - Now there are 'screenagers' who live most of their lives in the virtual world. Some people spend more time online than with
- 10 their families!
 - And this is the country where people are connected more than anywhere else in the world: South Korea. Here you can access the internet very easily, and it's really fast. You can download files ten times quicker here than in most countries in the world.
- 15 Even young children of three to five years old use the internet and spend eight hours a week online.
 - Then there are teenagers using the internet for eighteen hours a day. Experts say that if you take away the internet from these teens, they start to feel anxious and unhappy.
- 20 So, is Korea creating a nation of screen addicts? And will your country be like this in just two or three years' time?

Part 2

But is internet addiction a bad thing? Think for a moment about the information that you receive on screens. It's certainly not like

- 25 reading a book. Now we receive information via connections or hyperlinks. We just click on the link or touch the screen and something new appears.
 - And what about the videos of pets you watch on YouTube?
 You think it's funny or superficial, but this is part of a big online
- 30 conversation. You can watch the angry cat and then create your own clip or meme with a different cat. Sharing these photos and videos is more important than the content itself. It allows us to communicate with people in a more creative way.
 - So, do smartphones make us smarter or less smart? Let's return
- 35 to Korea for an answer. There's good news: Korea is the most connected country in the world, but it is also number one for education. It is regularly top of the world's education league tables. The reason may be that from an early age, Korean children are proficient at working together on the internet to

	simple and promotoric at mortaling adjustice of	•••
40	solve problems.	

···································	
	······
	·····
· 	
	·····
_ _	



Wild nature

VOCABULARY

Weather | Temperature | Natural disasters

GRAMMAR

Past Simple: regular and irregular verbs | Past Simple and Past Continuous

READING

Matching

LISTENING

Listening for gist | Identifying specific details | Matching

SPEAKING

Criticising

ENGLISH IN USE

Adverbs and indefinite pronouns

BBC CULTURE

Nice day, innit?

VOCABULARY

Weather and natural disasters

I can talk about the weather and natural disasters.

1 Omplete the weather words.

Noun	Adjective
snow	1snowy
² s	sunny
fog	3 f
4c	cloudy
wind	5 w
6i	icy
storm	⁷ s

2 04	Choose the correct answers.
_	Choose the correct dhawers.

1	We don't wo		iuse it's	today, so you can'
	18	b icy	c fog	(d) foggy
2	We can't go is rough.	out in our boat	because it's _	and the sea
	a sun	b sunny	c storm	d stormy
3	It's very cold the ground.	d here in winter o	ınd there's ofte	n on
	a snow	b snowy	c rain	d rainy
4	Look, it's a l	ovelyc	lay. Let's go sw	imming in the sea!
	a sun	b sunny	c wind	d windy
5	You should	drive slowly when	n there's	on the roads.
	a storm	b stormy	c ice	d icy
6	There's a lov	ely blue sky todo	ay – it isn't	at all.
	a sun	b sunny	c cloud	d cloudy
7	Sometimes	things blow awa	y when it's very	·
	a wind	b windy	c ice	d icy
8	Everything in	n the garden get	ts wet when it's	
	a cloud	b cloudy	c rain	d rainy

3

- 1 It very foggy today. It's very foggy today.
- 2 Oh no! It getting cloudy!
- 3 The sun is shine today.
- 4 Look, it's snowy. Let's build a snowman!
- 5 It's getting a bit storm now.

4 Choose the correct answers.

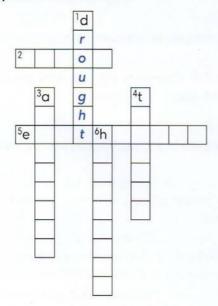
- 1 Which word do we use for '-' in -10?
 - (a) minus
- b less c lower
- 2 Which word does NOT mean 'hot'?
 - a warm
- **b** boiling
- 3 Which word does NOT mean 'cold'?
 - a mild
- b cool
- c freezing
- 4 Which word do we use to say 'o' in 35°?
 - a hot
- b degrees
- c temperature

- 1 Put your coat on it's freezing / mild outside!
- 2 It's a nice chilly / warm day, so we can sit outside.
- 3 It's often hot boiling / boiling hot here in the summer.
- 4 The water's a bit cool / mild, but it's not too cold.
- 5 It's lower / minus fifteen here, so it's very cold!
- 6 Sometimes the temperature reaches forty points / degrees in the summer.

6 Complete the natural disaster words.

- 1 earthquake
- 4 ts___mi
- 2 dr g t
- 5 a a _ _ che
- 3 fl d
- 6 h_rr___ne

7 Complete the crossword.



Across

- 2 when a lot of water covers the land
- 5 when the ground shakes

Down

- 1 when there is no rain for a long time and the ground becomes very dry
- 3 when a lot of snow falls from a mountain
- 4 when a very big wave comes from the sea onto the land
- 6 when there is a very strong wind

8 ••• Read what four people say about the weather in their area. Choose the correct option.

It's a horrible wet, 1 rainy / sunny day here in Manchester, so you need your umbrella. It's also quite ²chilly / boiling, so you definitely need your coat.

Sometimes we have ³earthquakes / floods here and our house shakes. It's quite scary. I live near the sea, so when this happens, we always worry that there might be ⁴an avalanche / a tsunami too.

Winters are usually 5boiling / freezing cold where I live and we often have lots of 6snow/ snowy. It's great because we can build snowmen, but the roads are dangerous because they're often ⁷ cloudy / icy.

Usually the summers are warm and 8sun / sunny here, but this year it's quite 9cool/mild. It's also quite rainy, so we're worried there might be a 10 flood / hurricane.

9 | Omplete the weather forecast with one word in each gap.

Weather around the world

- In Madrid it's boiling 1 hot today and the sky is a lovely clear blue.
- . In London it's quite cold and it's also starting to 2 a bit windy, so hold onto vour hats!
- In Paris the ³ is shining and it's lovely and warm.
- It's a cold night in Toronto, with temperatures as low as 4
- In northern Australia the 5 continues. Plants are dying because it's so dry and everyone is hoping for some rain soon.
- . In New York it's a lovely sunny day, with a temperature of around 25 6



I can use regular and irregular verbs to talk about the past.

1	 Complete the sentences with the Past Simple form of the verbs in brackets. 				
	1	I I was tired and I wanted (want) to go home.			
	2		(not er	100	
	3				Maths at university.
	4				us to organise the
			rty last week.		at to organico and
	5	1		Tim in th	e park yesterday.
	6		ra (ne		
		97,070		,	,pp,
2		Mo	atch infinitives	1-8 with	their Past Simple
	fo	rms	a-h.		
	1	С	become	а	met
	2	П	see	b	thought
	3	П	feel	С	became
	4	П	think		knew
	5	Ħ	take	е	
	6	H	meet		went
	7	H	go	g	felt
	8	H	know	_	took
	0		KIIOW		look
3	Si	mpl bec	e form of the pome, not go fe take, visit see,	oairs of v	
	1 We were scared when we <u>saw</u> the tsunami and we <u>didn't know</u> what to do.				
	2		ke ma		
	_		ınada last year		oo when he
	3		7.		quite bad, so we
		o to teste	outside.		10.10.000,00.110
	4	1_	really h	appy wh	en I finally
			bag again.		
	5			orae last	vear, but she
	5 She George last year, but she him at first.			7	
4				dialogu	es. Use the Past
	51	mpl	e.		
	1		What film <u>did</u>		last night?
		B:	We saw Speci	tre.	
	2	A:	When		?
		B:	The hurricane Tuesday night		ned on
	3	A:	The state of the s		your coat?
		B:	I put it in the l		
	4	A:			notos of the storm?
		B:	No, I didn't ta		
	5		When		
	B: I met him last summer.				

5	Complete the post with the Past Simple
	form of the verbs below.

become come feel help not sleep not stop not want see think watch

Wow! What amazing wea	ther! 1 Did you
see the snowstorm last ni	ght? It started
at about eight o'clock an	d at first
I ² it wasr	n't very bad. But
the snow soon ³	quite thick
on the ground. It ⁴	snowing
for about five hours! I 5	at
all because 1 6	so excited
- 1 ⁷ to m	iss anything! This
morning some friends 8_	
round to our house and 9	
us clear the snow away fr	om our door.
Thanks, guys! I don't knov	v about the weathe
today. 10 you	the weather
forecast on TV this morning	ng? Let me know if
you did!	

6 Complete the text with one word in each gap.

Yes, I 'saw t	he snowstorm	n ² night
- amazing!	The last storn	n like this was five
years 3	It ⁴	place
5	ecember, rig	ht at the beginning
of the winte	r. We made so	ome amazing
snowmen th	nat year, but u	infortunately, they
	and the same of th	ng because the
		ed some photos
	when the storr	
you see the		

READING and VOCABULARY

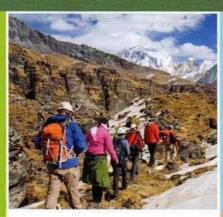
Amazing places to visit

I can find specific detail in a text and talk about culture.

1	WORD FRIENDS Choose the word that does NOT fit in each sentence.	Read the texts again. Match people 1–5 with phrases a–f to make true sentences. There is one
	1 You look ridiculous in that hat! a very b completely c absolutely 2 My brother is crazy! a absolutely b completely c very 3 Sam is good at English. a very b really c totally	extra phrase. 1
	4 That lesson was interesting. a completely b quite c really 5 This place is amazing! a quite b absolutely c totally 6 It's usually cold here in winter. a really b quite c totally	c enjoyed a very active holiday. d had a problem while on a trip. e wants to travel to a place that a relative visited. f enjoyed learning about the history of a place. Complete the phrases from the text. Then match them with definitions a-e.
2	Read the forum posts. Match headings 1–4 with posts A–D. 1	1 d very wild a fairly hot 2 stunning b not very cold 3 warm c very interesting 4 mild d with few people living there 5 fascinating e very beautiful

WILD PLACES

There are hundreds of amazing places to visit in the world. Tell us about your experiences!



A Last summer I went to Tibet with my family. We were in a very wild area high up in the Himalayas. It was a walking holiday, so we walked and climbed every day - sometimes up to over 4,000 metres! It's really beautiful in the summer, but in winter it's very dangerous because there's a lot of snow and there's always a possibility of avalanches. The local people believe that human-like creatures called yeti live in the mountains, but we didn't see any!

- B I live in the town of Moteuka in New Zealand, near the Abel Tasman National Park. The park is named after Abel Tasman, one of the first Europeans to reach New Zealand. It's an amazing wild place. There are forests where you can walk and camp, and some absolutely stunning beaches. I swam in the sea last week and it was really warm. Winter is quite mild and summer isn't too hot. There are a lot of earthquakes in New Zealand, but they aren't usually very bad in this area.
- C In July I travelled to Death Valley in the USA. It's a very dry place, with almost no rain for most of the year, so there aren't many plants. It's absolutely boiling in summer, with temperatures over fifty degrees! We learned about what life was like here in the past - that was absolutely fascinating. The first Europeans who arrived called it Death Valley because without water, you can't live there for very long! Sara

D My uncle went on an adventure holiday to South America last year. He travelled by boat through the rainforest of Brazil. He went in July, so it was really hot, but there wasn't too much rain because it was the dry season - he was pleased about that! He saw some really colourful birds and monkeys too. He didn't see any dangerous animals though. The photos he took are absolutely amazing! Some people still live a traditional life in the forest. Scientists are trying to learn from them how to use all the plants in the forest as medicines. I'd love to go there one day!



GRAMMAR

Past Simple and Past Continuous

I can talk about an event in the past and what was happening around it.

	Complete the sentences with the Past ontinuous form of the verbs in brackets.	4 Com	plete the sentenc	ces with when or
	He found some unusual plants while he was visiting (visit) Mexico.	1 I hurt my	y arm while I was	playing tennis
2	They (not listen) when the guide explained the dangers of eating wild		s waiting for us	we got
3	plants. What (you/do) when you saw	 We stay falling. 	ed inside	the snow was
	the avalanche? They (swim) in the sea when	4	my phone rang	, I was watching
	they saw the shark. (it/rain) when you left home?	5 The wed	ather changed su e thinking about w	
	Someone took my camera while I (not look).		omplete the dialo	
2 🌘	Choose the correct option.		le or Past Continu	
1	I was running for the bus when I dropped/ was dropping my phone. Jack fell asleep while he watched / was	look for	do eat fall find lose not stop sh	nine start
3	watching the film. We were walking home when the wind started /	Geogra	u <u>have</u> a good tim aphy trip last week	</td
4	was starting to get stronger. My cousins stayed / were staying in Japan when the earthquake happened.	morning	² a grea g while the sun ³ _ to rain while w	But it
5	The bear appeared / was appearing while we were walking down the mountain.		ch, and it ⁶	
6	The postman came / was coming while we were having breakfast.	A: Oh dear! Where ⁷ you these amazing rocks? B: I ⁸ them while we ⁹		
Sir	Complete the sentences with the Past mple or Past Continuous form of the verbs in ackets.	plants n A: They're	near the river. lovely. But it's a pi a. What ¹⁰	ity about your
1	We <u>saw</u> (see) something strange in the sky while we <u>were looking</u> (look) at the stars.	when yo	ou ¹¹ it? over some ro	ocks when
2	The sun (shine) when we (arrive) at the beach.	13	and droppe	d it into the river.
3	While I (wait) for the bus, I (text) a few friends.	The second secon	e words in a-b to rases. Then use tl	
4	Jenna (cry) when I finally (find) her.		to complete	Cluss
5	We first (hear) about the storm while we (have) dinner.	a accide	ent / was / an / it	
6	When I (arrive) at Paula's house, she (sit) outside in	b funny,	/ time / was / at /	it / the
	her garden.	The state of the s	l laughed when he . I know it was dar	
			erry, I didn't mean	to break the



I can identify specific detail in a conversation about an activity camp.

1 Look at the pictures and complete the words.





1 waterfall

2 s





3 s_____

4 |_____





5 b

6 b_

2 Complete the sentences with the words below. There is one extra word.

path eave bat stars wildlife sky

1 It was very dark at the back of the <u>cave</u>.

2 At night you can see the _____ shining.

3 There is a lot of interesting _____ in the forest.

4 We followed the ____ until we came to a river.

5 There were only a few clouds in the

3	WORD FRIENDS	Match 1-6 with a-f to make
	sentences.	

1 d It was raining, so we made

2 It was cold, so we made

3 I really want to learn

4 It's too cold to sleep

5 Last year scientists discovered

6 We looked

a about the wildlife in the forest.

b some interesting plants here.

c a fire to keep warm.

d a shelter to keep us dry.

e for wild animals, but didn't find any.

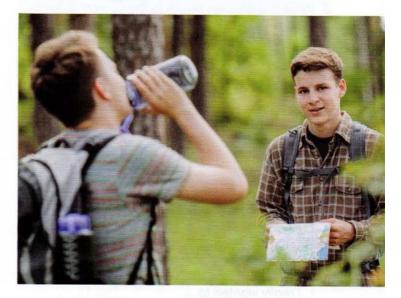
f outside.

4 6 06 Listen to the first part of a conversation. What kind of summer camp did Alex go on?

a extreme fitness

b survival skills

c discovering wildlife



5 © 07 Listen to the second part of the conversation. Match people 1–4 with activities a–f. There are two extra activities.

1 Alex

3 Dan

2 Chloe

4 Alex's mum

a was cold at night

b tried to make a fire

c worried about finding water

d needs a comfortable place to sleep

e got lost at night

f caught a fish

2.6 SPEAKING

Criticising

I can criticise and explain when things go wrong.

1 Complete the sentences with the words bel	ow.
---	-----

	mean	wanted	careful	realise	thinking
1	What	were you	thinking	g of?	
2	I didn	't	to.		
3	Just b	e more	Audic	next	time.
4	I really	y	to	make yo	ou laugh.
		rry, I didi			

2 Order the words to make sentences.

- 1 for / do / what / you / that / did / ?
 What did you do that for?
- 2 thought / I / asleep / you / were
- 3 do/why/you/that/did/?
- 4 hurt/didn't/you/mean/I/to
- 5 wanted / really / to / help / I

3 Write the phrases below in the correct column.

I didn't mean to	I didn't realise.
I really wanted to	I thought you were
Just be more careful next	time.
What did you do that for?	
What were you thinking of	f?
Why did you do that?	

Criticising	
Explaining	
I really wanted to	

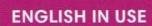
4 Choose the correct responses.

- 1 You lost my phone! Why did you do that?
 - a I thought it was your phone.
 - (b) I didn't mean to lose it.
 - c Just be more careful next time.
- 2 Surprise! Look at this big spider!
 - a I didn't mean to scare you.
 - b Oh, I'm sorry. I didn't realise.
 - c Why did you do that? You know I hate spiders!
- 3 I'm sorry my football broke your window.
 - a Well, just be more careful next time.
 - b What did you do that for?
 - c Oh, I didn't realise.
- 4 You used my bike without asking me! What were you thinking of?
 - a Why did you do that?
 - b I'm sorry. I thought it was OK to use it.
 - c Just be more careful next time.

5 © 08 Complete the dialogues with one word in each gap. Listen and check.

1	
Ella:	Jack, where's my concert ticket from last night?
Jack:	I put it in the bin.
Ella:	¹ Why did you do that?
Jack:	you didn't want it.
Ella:	Of course I want it – I want to keep it as a souvenir!
2	
Tom:	What's all this mess?
Lisa:	Err, I was trying to do some cooking and things went a bit wrong
Tom:	What were you ³ of? Mum's coming home soon.
Lisa:	I didn't ⁴ to make a mess.
Tom:	Come on, I can help you clear it up.
Kim:	Why is my jumper all wet?
Dora:	I washed it for you.
Kim:	What did you do that ⁵ ?
Dora:	Well, I wore it today and I dropped hot chocolate all over it.
Kim:	Well, just be more ⁶ next time - and don't wear my clothes without

asking me!



Adverbs and indefinite pronouns

I can use adverbs and indefinite pronouns.

1 Complete the table.

People	Things	Places	
somebody	1 something	somewhere	
2	nothing	3	
everybody	4	everywhere	
5	anything	6	

2 Choose the correct option.

- 1 I want to go somewhere something exciting next year.
- 2 He wants to invite everything / everybody to his party.
- 3 Is there something / anything to eat?
- 4 The streets were really busy there were people everywhere / anywhere.
- 5 It's boring here there's anything / nothing to do!
- 6 Cara doesn't have anybody / nobody to talk to.
- 7 Everybody like / likes chips!
- 8 There is / isn't nothing in the box.

3 Complete the sentences with indefinite pronouns.

- 1 I wasn't hungry so I didn't eat anything.
- 2 Don't tell about this it's a secret!
- 3 I looked _____ for my phone, but I didn't find it.
- 4 Can we stop for a minute? There's ______ in my shoe.
- 5 There's _____ for young people to go in this town it's awful!
- 6 _____ stole my purse while I was waiting for the bus.

4 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first sentence. Use no more than three words.

- All the people at the concert were really happy.
 - Everybody at the concert was really happy.
- 2 I haven't got anything to wear!
 - I ______ nothing to wear!
- 3 There was nowhere to sit down.
 - anywhere to sit down.
- 4 All the things in the shop were expensive.

 Everything in ______ expensive.

5 Read the text. Choose the correct answers.

A survival story

Last year Tyler Jackson and his friend Liam were walking in the mountains in Canada. It suddenly became very foggy, so they had to stop. Luckily, they about survival. First, they had to find water. You can't survive for long if you don't to drink. Luckily, they had food with them. If you have 3 to eat, you will soon get very cold up in the mountains. They then looked around for 4 safe to sleep and found a small cave. All their friends and family knew they were in the mountains, so they knew that 5 would call the mountain rescue service. Two days later the rescuers found them and 6 ended well.



- 1 a nothing
 - **b** anything
- 2 a everything
 - **b** nothing
- 3 a nothing
- **b** anything
- 4 a somewhere
 - **b** something
- 5 a anybody
 - **b** somebody
- 6 a something
 - **b** anything

- c something
- d somewhere
- c anywhered anything
- c nobody
- d everything
- c anywhere
- d anything
- c nobody
- d something
- c everything
- d nothing



SELF-ASSESSMENT

For each learning objective, tick (/) the box that best matches your ability.

○ ○ = I understand and can help a friend.

= I understand but have some questions.

= I understand and can do it by myself.

= I do not understand.

		\odot	\odot	8	88	Need help?	Now try
2.1	Vocabulary					Students' Book pp. 22-23 Workbook pp. 18-19	Ex. 1-2, p. 27
2.2	Grammar					Students' Book p. 24 Workbook p. 20	Ex. 3, p. 27
2.3	Reading					Students' Book p. 25 Workbook p. 21	son all altitles
2.4	Grammar					Students' Book p. 26 Workbook p. 22	Ex. 4-5, p. 27
2.5	Listening					Students' Book p. 27 Workbook p. 23	- max(pnnod
2.6	Speaking					Students' Book p. 28 Workbook p. 24	Ex. 7, p. 27
2.7	English in Use					Students' Book p. 29 Workbook p. 25	Ex. 6, p. 27

- 2.1 I can talk about the weather and natural disasters.
- 2.2 I can use regular and irregular verbs to talk about the past.
- 2.3 I can find specific detail in a text and talk about culture.
- 2.4 I can talk about an event in the past and what was happening around it.
- 2.5 I can identify specific detail in a conversation about an activity camp.
- 2.6 I can criticise and explain when things go wrong.
- 2.7 I can use adverbs and indefinite pronouns.

What can you remember from this unit?

	(the words you most want to remember from this unit)	(any expressions or p sound nice, usef		e.g. from websites, books, adverts, films, music)
		- Impos d		and the same
		to person to a		
produced by the second of the				
professor b				
gration b Trace of the second		profession in the		
and the second s		I PLANTED IN		
The second secon			1100	

2.9

SELF-CHECK



Vocabulary

1	Complete the words in the sentence					
	1	Look, it's a lovely s	day!			
	•	0 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	de extreme			

- 2 Some trees blew down in the strong
 w______.
- 3 We couldn't see very well because it was f_____.
- 4 It's quite **m** today, so you don't need a coat.
- 5 Shut the door! It's **f** cold outside!
- 6 The temperature is twenty-seven **d**______today.
- 7 It rained for five days and there was a **f** in our town.
- 8 Our school building shook during the **e**

2 Choose the correct option.

- 1 The stars / leaves fall off the trees in winter.
- 2 We found a small path / sky going through the forest.
- 3 We tried to have / make a shelter, but it was too difficult.
- 4 Scientists watched / discovered some unusual plants near the river.
- 5 This book is completely / really interesting.
- 6 You won the game? That's absolutely / very fantastic!

Grammar

3 Complete the sentences with the Past Simple form of the verbs below.

ı	go	have	not see	not want	stay	tak			
1	I at the activity camp for								
	three weeks.								

- We spent three weeks in Iceland, but we _____ the Northern Lights.
- 3 I _____ swimming every day when I was on holiday.
- 4 His first concert _____ place in London last week.
- 5 She _____ to touch the spider.
- 6 _____ you ____ a good time on the Survival Weekend?

4 Complete the sentences with the Past Continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

	I knew that my dad	(not watch) the film
	because his eyes were c	osed.

- 2 Lia hurt her knee while she _____ (swim) in the river.
- 3 They _____ (not chat) when I arrived.
- 4 A: _____ (the sun/shine) when you left home?
 B: Yes, it _____.
- 5 A: _____ (the bears/sleep) when you saw them?
 B: No, they _____. They were wide awake!

5 Choose the correct option.

- 1 I saw / was seeing a really big spider while I walked / was walking through the forest.
- 2 A lot of people skied / were skiing on the mountain when the avalanche happened / was happening.
- 3 We watched / were watching some amazing sunsets while we stayed / were staying in Scotland.
- 4 My brother sat / was sitting in the kitchen when I got / was getting home.
- 5 We watched / were watching TV when / while the hurricane started.

6 Choose the correct answers.

- 1 I'm cold I want to go _____ warm!
 a something b everywhere c somewhere
 2 I'm really bored there's _____ to do here!
 a anything b nothing c something
- 3 He's a very popular singer. _____ loves his music!
 - a Everybody b Anybody c Somebody
- 4 I'm lonely because I haven't got _____ to talk to.
 a nobody b anybody c somebody

Speaking language practice

7 Complete the dialogues with the phrases below.

be more careful I didn't mean to I didn't realise I really wanted why did you do that

- A: Where's my bike?
- B: I said that Jo could use it today.
- A: 1______? I need it today.
- B: Sorry, ²______you needed it.
- A: Oh look the pizzas are burnt!
- B: Sorry, ³ burn them.

 4 to help, so I put them in the oven.
- A: Well, just ⁵_____next time.

1 Match the words below with the photos.

freak snowstorm grey skies high winds sunny climate torrential rain tropical storm





1 freak snowstorm

2





00/1/2000

4





6

2 What countries have the weather conditions in Exercise 1?

snowstorms: Iceland

3 Complete the sentences with the words below.

chaotic chasers devastation extremes factors forecaster

- 1 It's difficult to be a weather <u>forecaster</u> in the UK because the weather is always changing!
- 2 In the USA they have great _____ of weather.
- 3 Storm _____ follow storms and warn people of the danger.
- 4 Tornadoes can cause damage and
- 5 Snowstorms can bring _____ conditions to the roads and railways.
- 6 Economic and social _____ may influence our character more than the weather.

4 Complete the sentences with the Past Simple or Past Continuous of the verbs in brackets.

1	These men were fishing (fish)
	without any problem in the ocean,
	but suddenly, they
	(decide) to turn back.

2	This young dolphin
	(swim) with its
	group when it
	(get) separated in a big wave

3	The storm	(hit
	when the people in	the village
	(go)	to bed.

4	Torrential rain		
	(arrive) while the people		
	(build) a big		
	shelter		

5	We	(travel)
	by boat when	a huge whale
		(hit) the side and
	the boatsink.	(start) to

Write the opposite of the underlined adjectives. Use the words below.

ı	deep	rough	torrential	ualy	warm

- 1 The water is <u>shallow</u>, so it's very easy to swim. <u>deep</u>
- 2 The seascape is <u>beautiful</u>, with lots of colourful corals.

3	The rain is light - you can
	definitely go out in it.

- 4 The sea is really <u>calm</u> right now you can easily go swimming.
- 5 The air is <u>cool</u> today perfect for a nice walk!

6 Choose the correct option.

- The sunset was absolutely / very fantastic yesterday.
- 2 This exercise is totally / really difficult.
- 3 The video about the Atlantic was completely / quite good.
- 4 There are lot of videos on YouTube which are completely / very crazy.
- 5 The weather where I live is usually really / totally nice.

7 Read the video script. Underline any words or phrases you don't know and translate them into your language.

Severe weather

Part 1

This is the wildest ocean on Earth! It is home to totally amazing marine life: penguins, seals, whales, dolphins and sharks - and people who battle the roughest seas. It stretches 16,000 km from s its shallow waters in the sunny tropics to the deep dark waters of the Arctic and Antarctic. It is an ocean of great extremes. It is unpredictable and dangerous, but at the same time absolutely beautiful. This is a strange paradise! Welcome to the Atlantic! Part 2 10 This is Cape Verde, a group of islands off the coast of Africa. Here hot winds from the Sahara Desert have made the sea turn wild. The waves are huge and the conditions are difficult. These men were fishing without any problem in the ocean. But suddenly, they decided to turn back. It was too dangerous to 15 continue. Winds like this cross the Atlantic quickly. Warm air rises from the sea and creates black clouds. A vortex then forms and the water of the ocean spins around very fast. The storm crosses the ocean very quickly and it grows stronger with every mile. At 120 km per 20 hour, this storm is now a hurricane! It's an unstoppable force of nature and is now moving towards the Caribbean. Dolphins swim to deeper water. They must stay together through the storm. Torrential rain arrives on land and enormous waves and strong winds cause devastation. Paradise is now hell! 25 Part 3 This hurricane was particularly strong. Here in the Bahamas it destroyed houses, trees and businesses, but the people were able to escape. However, in the sea there is no protection for the animals. 30 Hurricanes break up dolphin groups. Somewhere in the ocean this young dolphin was swimming with its group when it was separated _____ from the others in a big wave. Now it's at risk from a shark attack. Here a manatee finds safety in a mangrove forest. In fact, these underwater forests protect this area very well from storms 35 because the vegetation is so thick. Soon the coral reefs recover and our young dolphin is reunited with the group.

And so life in the Tropical Atlantic returns to normal. The stormy conditions will come again, but for now all is calm in paradise.



VOCABULARY

write them below.

Food and drink

Find eight food and drink words in the word search and

I can talk about food and drink.

The taste test

110	-		**		-
	1 60-07	\ D		л	υv
VO		40		м	

Food and drinks | Flavours | Describing food

GRAMMAR

Present Perfect with ever, never, just, already, yet, for and since | Present Perfect and Past Simple

READING

Multiple choice

LISTENING

Identifying specific detail | True/False

SPEAKING

Ordering food

WRITING

An email to a friend

BBC CULTURE

What do the British really eat?

H	0	N	Е	Y	Ν	G	Α	Р	L
W	M	Z	Α	X	G	S	Ν	Е	Ε
Α	С	R	1	S	P	S	U	D	M
S	R	В	1	Α	Ε	0	T	F	0
0	Ε	0	S	В	Α	K	S	Е	N
M	Α	R	Ν	R	C	L	C	С	Α
E	M	-1	C	0	Н	L	Н	T	D
F	Α	Υ	0	G	Н	U	R	T	Ε
L	E	T	T	U	C	Ε	0	E	Н
Α	Α	E	٧	Ν	0	1	C	L	Ν

1	honey	5	c m
2	c s	6	p h
3	y t	7	n s
4	l e	8	le
•	Choose the correct answers.		

- 2 1 Which one is NOT a fruit? b pear c pineapple (a) garlic 2 Which one is a kind of meat? a flour b beef c cheese 3 Which one is NOT a drink? a ice cream b smoothie c lemonade 4 Which one is a dairy food? a honey b tuna c cheese 5 Which one is NOT a vegetable? a lettuce b cucumber c grapes 6 Which one is NOT sweet? a honey b crisps c chewing gum 7 Which one makes you feel hot? b bread rolls c ice cream
- 3 Match descriptions 1–7 with foods a–g.

1	c It's a vegetable you use in salads.	а	flour
2	It's a drink made with fruit.	b	tuna
3	It's a large fruit.	C	eucumbe
4	It's a kind of fish.	d	ice cream
5	You eat them as a snack.	е	smoothie
6	You use it to make bread.	f	crisps
7	It's a cold, sweet food.	g	pineapple

- 4 Oose the correct option.
 - 1 I always drink cheese / fruit juice in the morning.
 - 2 I love fruit, especially garlic / grapes.
 - 3 My sister doesn't agree with killing animals for food, so she doesn't eat beef / peach.
 - 4 Lettuce / Lemonade is my favourite drink!
 - 5 I sometimes add *cheese* / *honey* to yoghurt to make it taste sweet.
 - 6 You can add chilli / cream to food to give it a hot taste.
- **5** Complete the sentences with the words below.

bread roll cheese chewing gum garlic

- 1 Nuts are a healthy snack.
- 2 My sister likes a lot of _____ on her pizza, but I don't like dairy foods.
- 3 I had a lovely warm _____ for breakfast.
- 4 We aren't allowed to have _____ in our mouth when we're in class.
- 5 Would you prefer an apple or a ?
- 6 You can add _____ to food to give a strong flavour.
- **6** Order the letters and complete the words in the sentences.

What's your favourite ice cream flavour?

- 1 I like fruit flavours like <u>melon</u> (emoln) and ———— (wabesrtrry).
- 2 My favourite ice cream flavours are (lacohotec) and (laivlna). Mmm!
- 3 I love _____ (mtni) because it's a lovely cool flavour.
- 4 | like _____ (menlo) flavour because it isn't sweet.
- 5 _____ (nccootu) is definitely my favourite!

 I like ____ (foecef) as a drink, but I hate it as an ice cream flavour.

7 Complete what the people say about food and drink with the words below.

bread-roll crisps fruit juice lettuce strawberry yoghurt

I usually eat a ¹bread roll with butter and jam for breakfast, and drink a glass of ² — apple is my favourite. For lunch, I often have a salad with ³ — and cucumber or maybe a sandwich. I don't eat many snacks like ⁴ — because they aren't good for you. If I'm hungry, I often have a fruit ⁵ — my favourite flavour is ⁶ —!

beef nuts pineapple smoothie tuna vanilla

A

- A: Mmm, I love this ¹ chocolate) flour cake! Did you make it?
- B: Yes, I did. I used ²garlic / honey to make it nice and sweet. Shall I pour some ³crisps / cream on it for you?
- A: Oh yes, please!

R

- A: Do you like the ⁴lemonade / lemon ice cream?
- B: Yes, it's OK, but I think the ⁵coconut / coconuts ice cream is nicer.

C

- A: This meat is nice. It tastes quite hot.
- B: That's because I added some ⁶chilli / cheese. Maybe next time I should add some herbs like ⁷melon / mint to make it taste cooler!



Past Perfect with ever, never, just, already and yet

I can use the Present Perfect with ever, never, just, already and yet.

1	Complete the sentences with the Present Perfect form of the verbs in brackets.					
	1 I 've invited (invite) all my friends to the party.					
	2	Sam (not decide) what to do yet. (you/try) mint ice cream?				
	4 5	We (not have) lunch yet. Sasha (eat) noodles with chilli!				
	6 7	(your dad/order) the pizzas yet? I (hear) his music before – it's really good.				
2	Rewrite the sentences putting the words in brackets in the correct place.					
	1	Have you tried making bread? (ever) Have you ever tried making bread?				
	2	I've cooked noodles. (never)				
	3	Molly has left. (just)				
	4 We haven't finished eating. (yet)					
	5 I've had lunch. (already)					
	6	Have you watched his cookery show on TV? (ever)				
	7	Have you tried the pizza? (yet)				
3	Make sentences in the Present Perfect. Use the words in brackets.					
	1	you / meet / a famous chef / ? (ever) Have you ever met a famous chef?				
	2 the film / start (already)					
	3	your email / not arrive (yet)				
	4	you / make / Sara's birthday cake / ? (yet)				
	5	5 Mike / cook / a meal (never)				
	6	we / order / our food (just)				

	, ,	or, arroady and you		
4		Choose the correct option.		
	1	Have you (ever)/ yet eaten chilli ice cream?		
	2	I've never / already seen that film, so I don't want to see it again.		
	3	Have you cooked the pizza yet / ever?		
	4	Jo isn't here - she's just / yet left.		
	5	I've ever / never tried Chinese food.		
	6	I haven't finished my homework yet / already.		
5	Pe	Complete the dialogues. Use the Present erfect.		
	Α			
	A:	Have you finished your homework yet? (you/ finish/your homework/yet)?		
	B:	No, I ² But Tara ³ (do/already)		
		all the Maths exercises, so she can help me!		
	В			
	A:	4(you/try/ever) a vegetable smoothie?		
	B:	Yes, 1 ⁵		
	С			
	A:	7 (you/watch) that new cookery show on TV?		
	В:	No, I ⁸ (hear) people talking about it a lot, but I ⁹ (never/see) it. Is it good?		
	A:	Yes, it's great. I ¹⁰ (learn/already) a lot		

6 Complete the email with one word in each gap.

just from watching the first two shows.

× D	- 🛛 🔘 🗐
From: To:	Niki; Maria;
Hi	Maria,
of t son typ em	e film night. I ¹ 've made some pizzas – yes, I made em myself! Have you ² tried making your en pizza? It isn't difficult. I haven't tasted them because I've ⁴ taken them out the oven, so they're still really hot. I've also bought me coconut ice cream. I've ⁵ tried this se before, so I hope it's nice. Jake ⁶ ailed me to say he can come, which is great, but heard from Cara ⁸ . I hope she
	e you later!
Nik	



READING and VOCABULARY

A passion for chocolate

I can find specific detail in an article and use make and do accurately.

1	Complete the sentences with the correct				
	form of make or do.				

1	Sam <u>makes</u> a lot of cakes.		
2	your ho	omework now.	
3	Have you	your decision yet?	
4	Please don't	a mess in here!	
5 You didn't win the competition, but your best, so well done!		(BEC :	

2 Complete the sentences with nouns formed from the verbs below.

tro	om the ve	rbs bel	ow.	
	appear	build	compete	weigh
1	Their apartment is in a new building.			
2	Laura spends a lot of money on			
	clothes b	pecaus	e her	is important
3	No chocolate for me, thanks. I'm trying to			
	lose			, 0
4	We're ha	ving a	cookery_	at our

3 Read the article. Choose the correct answers.

school.

- 1 Why did Dean first start making chocolates?
 - a He wanted to earn some money.
 - b He wanted a special present for a relative.
 - c He was looking for a new hobby.
 - d He wanted to win a competition.
- 2 What happened when he first tried to sell his chocolates?
 - Only his family and friends bought his chocolates.
 - b He made too many chocolates and couldn't sell them all.
 - c Family members had to help him make more chocolates quickly.
 - d His prices were too high.
- 3 Why is his honey and chilli chocolate his favourite?
 - a It makes the most money.
 - b It is the most popular with his customers.
 - c It's his most unusual flavour.
 - d It was his own idea.
- 4 What are Dean's plans for the summer?
 - a to work on some new chocolates to sell
 - b to work for a chocolate-maker in his town
 - c to visit France with his family
 - d to go on holiday with friends

Write a sentence for each highlighted phrase in the article.

A passion for chocolate

Dean Pollard is seventeen and he runs

a successful business, making delicious chocolates.

Dean has made chocolates since he was ten years old, but he didn't plan to make money from them at first. He just wanted to give his grandma something special for her birthday. He found that he enjoyed making chocolates and he soon started winning competitions. His parents were just pleased that his hobby didn't have a bad effect on his school work.

In the beginning, Dean just made chocolates for family and friends and he never asked for any money. But at the age of fifteen he decided to turn his passion into a business, so he set up a website. He kept his prices quite low, and the first weekend the website came online he was so busy that his parents had to help out so there were enough chocolates for all the customers! He soon decided to put his prices up!

Dean makes a huge range of chocolates with different flavours and he's especially proud of his more unusual flavours like his lemon coconut creams. Mint and strawberry are the most popular flavours with customers, but Dean is particularly proud of his honey and chilli chocolate, not because it makes a lot of money for him, but because it was the first flavour that he developed himself.

So, what are Dean's plans for the summer? A local chocolate-maker in his town has offered him the chance to work for them during the summer holiday, but Dean isn't interested in the job. He really wants to spend the summer working on some exciting new flavours for his chocolates. 'My friends have invited me to go to France with them, but I'm just too busy,' he says. 'Maybe next year!'



GRAMMAR

Present Perfect with for and since; Present Perfect and Past Simple

I can talk about duration of time and be general and specific about experiences.

B: 1

Write the words below in the correct column.

a few weeks an hour last Tuesday my birthday November Saturday ten years three days two months 2012

For - a period of time	
a few weeks	UUU
Since – a point in time	

2 Omplete the sentences with for or since.

- 1 We've been here <u>for</u> nearly an hour, and the train hasn't arrived yet!
- 2 There has been a cinema here 2002.
- 3 We haven't had any homework Monday.
- 4 Mr Thomas has worked at this school over twenty years.
- 5 Tom has been at college
 _____ a few months now
 and he loves it.
- 6 I've had this phone __ last summer.

- I went) / have been to New York two years ago.
- 2 This restaurant opened / has opened in 2015.
- 3 We lived / have lived in this house for two months now, so it's beginning to feel like home.
- 4 I knew / have known Paul since I was five years old – he's my best friend.
- 5 Did you see / Have you seen Emily yesterday?
- 6 Did you ever go / Have you ever been to Paris?

4	Complete the dialogues with the Present Perfect
	or Past Simple form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 A: Have you seen (you/see) the new James Bond film yet? Yes, I (see) it last night. B: 2 A: (never/try) pear juice. Is it nice? B: Yes. I (try) some last summer. (you/meet) Mark? 3 A: B: Yes, I (meet) him yesterday. 4 A: Jack (not do) his Maths homework. What about you?
- **5** Complete the texts with the Present Perfect or Past Simple form of the verbs in brackets.

(do) it at the weekend.

	n/eat) there? The food's ave) some tuna, which
(not like) it at all, and we ⁷ for our food! But that ⁸ months ago.	(wait) for ages (be) about six
I think the food ⁹ year. A lot of people I know ¹⁰ the food there. Two of my friend there last Saturday and they ¹² _ any complaints.	_ (improve) since last (enjoy) ds ¹¹ (eat) (not have)

6 Complete the dialogues with one word in each gap.

Α			
A:	1Have you ever o	drunk coconut milk?	
		I tried it about two years ago,	
	but I 3	like it. It was disgusting! I haven't	
	tried it again ⁴ _		
В			
A:	Have you 5	to the new Pizza Palace	
	restaurant yet?		
B:	No, 16	. Where is it?	
A:	It's on Clarence Street. It's been open ⁷		
	about six weeks	now.	
B:	Oh, I 8	know it was there. Let's go there	
	this evening!		

3.5

LISTENING and VOCABULARY

A dream cake

I can identify specific detail in speech and describe food.

1 Complete the words for describing food.

1	swe et	7 rh	
	bld	8 d_y	
3	b_tt_r	9 d l c	S
4	fh	10 ste	
5	sr	11 ty	
6	spv		

- 2 Choose the correct option.
 - 1 I made this cake six days ago, so it's probably a bit stale / spicy now.
 - 2 I love this icing it's bland / delicious!
 - 3 It's a lovely sauce, but it's quite rich / tasty, so I can't eat very much.
 - 4 Don't add too much sugar I don't like food that's too bland / sweet.
 - 5 These grapes are lovely and fresh / dry!
 - 6 Lemon juice is too spicy / sour to drink.
- 3 © 09 Listen to Lily talking about the cake she has made. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).

1	Lily has made a cake for her friends.
2	She has made cakes since she was ten.
3	Her cake is in the shape of a boat.
4	It's a chocolate cake.
5	The filling is red.
6	You can read a message on the cake.

4 10 Listen to information about the competition Lily has entered. Complete the text.

Are you a champion baker? On takes place soon. Why not ma it along? You never know — you	ake a cake and bring
Date of competition: 1	June
Bring cakes to the cookery ro	om in school before
Last year's winning novelty of shape of an 3	ake: a cake in the
Cost of entry: 4£	per cake
Prize: a 5 and £	25
Entry forms available from Mr	Cussans as the

- 5 10 Choose the correct option. Listen again and check.
 - 1 The judges will taste the cakes before they make/ get their decision.
 - 2 Mrs Addison will give / announce the winner.
 - 3 If you'd like to enter / make the competition, you need an entry form.
 - 4 You need to write / fill in your entry form by next week.
 - 5 Someone's going to win / earn that prize!





I can order food in a café or restaurant.

1 Match 1–6 with a–f to make sentences.	3 Can I get you something?
1 c Take a seat and a you something?	a Nearly.
2 What would you b you are.	b Just a sandwich for me, please.
3 Would you like c I'll get you the menu.	c Take a seat.
4 Here d order?	4 I'd like a slice of lemon cake.
5 Are you ready to e like to drink?	a I'll give you the menu.
	b Me too.
6 Can I get f anything to eat?	
2 Complete the sentences with the words below.	c Sorry I'm late.
Complete the sentences with the words below.	5 11 Complete the dialogues with one
excuse have please slice thanks	word in each gap. Listen and check.
100	A
1 Excuse me, can I have some water?	
2 Not for me,	Waiter: Hello. Are you ¹ ready to order?
3 Just a smoothie for me,	Max: Yes. Can I ²
4 I'll a coffee, please.	a banana smoothie, please?
5 I'd like a of chocolate cake, please.	Waiter: Of ³ . And would you
	4 anything to eat?
Write the phrases below in the correct column.	Max: No, ⁵ the
I American I a a a la la companya di a	smoothie, please.
Are you ready to order? Can I get you something?	B
Excuse me, can I have? Here you are.	Rob: Hi! I'm sorry I'm late.
I'd like a I'll have Just for me, please.	Leah: That's OK. I've just 6
Not for me, thanks. What would you like to drink? Take a seat and I'll get you the menu.	an ice cream, but the waiter
Would you like anything to eat?	hasn't brought it yet. What do you
would you like drightling to eat?	7 2
The customer says	Rob: Oh, ice cream sounds nice. Where's
•	
	can I ⁹ a vanilla ice
	cream, please?
	Waiter: Yes, of course. Would you like
	anything to drink?
The waiter says	Rob: 10 for me, thanks.
	Just the ice cream.
Are you ready to order?	
	6 Complete sentences 1–3 OUT of
	with the words below.
	Then match the sentences
	with meanings a-c.
4 Choose the correct responses.	fancy get guys
	1 🔲 I don't cake today.
1 Would you like anything to eat?	2 Hi,
a Here you are.	
(b) Not for me, thanks.	
c I'll get it.	a I can order my food and drink
2 Excuse me, can I have a strawberry smoothie,	myself.
please?	b I want to eat something different.
a Thanks.	c a way of saying hello to a group of
b Are you ready to order?	friends
c Of course.	



I can write an email to a friend.

1	Order the letters and write the verbs in
	the sentences.

- You need a knife to chop (hcpo) the onions and carrots.
- 2 _____ (ryf) the fish in a bit of butter.
- 3 I usually _____ (lobi) eggs for about four minutes.
- 4 Add the cheese and ______ (xmi) everything together.
- 5 ____ (liesc) the tomato and put it on top of the pizza.

2 Complete the email with the phrases below.

are things can't wait decided to have great to hear I was wondering just finished let me know if

× □ ⊕	
From: Rob;	18.0
To: Tanya;	
Hi Tanya,	
How ¹ are things	s? It was ²
	eek. I'm really pleased that
	ur holiday and I'm glad
things are going	g well at your new school.
1 3	to hear more about it
when I see you.	
We've ⁴	our exams here
- the Maths exa	am was really difficult, as
usual! We've 5_	a class lunch
to celebrate the	e end of the year. It's next
Thursday. The p	olan is for everyone to make
a dish and then	we can all share the food.
	zza. I buy the pizza base, of
	ry some onions, then I chop
	and mix those with the
Carrier Control of the Control of th	at mixture onto the pizza
	or two eggs, then I slice
	nem on the pizza.
	ome cheese to put on top -
delicious!	
Anyway, 6	if you'd like
	now everyone from when
The state of the s	s class and we'd all be really
	you again. Maybe you could
bring a cake or	
	you can make it.
I hope you can!	
Rob	

3 Write the sentences in the correct group.

Bye for now. Great to hear from you. See you soon. I can't wait to hear more about it. I'm making a pizza. I'm writing to ask if you'd like to come. How are things? We've just finished our exams.

Starting your email	Thanks for getting in touch.
Responding to news	It was great to hear about your holiday.
Giving your news	We've decided to organise a class lunch.
Explaining why you're writing	By the way, I was wondering if you'd like to come.
Ending your email	Let me know if you can make it. Bye for now.

4 Complete the notes with the words below.

at her new school I'm making invite her next Friday suggest what she to-email

- must remember 'to email Marty (in our class last year)
- glad she's happy ²
- tell her about class lunch 3
- tell her what 4
- 5 to the lunch
- should bring

5 Look at the notes in Exercise 4. Write an email to Marty. Follow the instructions below.

- 1 Use the email in Exercise 2 as a model.
- 2 Write four paragraphs:
 - Paragraph 1: start your email and respond to Marty's news.
 - Paragraph 2: give your news and explain why you're writing. Describe what you're making for the lunch.
 - Paragraph 3: invite Marty to the class lunch.
 - · Paragraph 4: end your email.
- 3 Use cooking verbs to describe what you're making for the lunch.



SELF-ASSESSMENT

For each learning objective, tick (\checkmark) the box that best matches your ability.

co = I understand and can help a friend.

= I understand but have some questions.

= I understand and can do it by myself.

(E) = I do not understand.

		\odot	\odot	8	88	Need help?	Now try
3.1	Vocabulary				1000	Students' Book pp. 34–35 Workbook pp. 30–31	Ex. 1-2, p. 39
3.2	Grammar	- 1981 /-				Students' Book p. 36 Workbook p. 32	Ex. 3-4, p. 39
3.3	Reading	F6 16 1 1			1 11111	Students' Book p. 37 Workbook p. 33	
3.4	Grammar					Students' Book p. 38 Workbook p. 34	Ex. 5-6, p. 39
3.5	Listening					Students' Book p. 39 Workbook p. 35	
3.6	Speaking	are displacement				Students' Book p. 40 Workbook p. 36	Ex. 7, p. 39
3.7	Writing					Students' Book p. 41 Workbook p. 37	

- 3.1 I can talk about food and drink.
- 3.2 I can use the Present Perfect with ever, never, just, already and yet.
- 3.3 I can find specific detail in an article and use make and do accurately.
- 3.4 I can talk about duration of time and be general and specific about experiences.
- 3.5 I can identify specific detail in speech and describe food.
- 3.6 I can order food in a café or restaurant.
- 3.7 I can write an email to a friend.

What can you remember from this unit?

New words I learned (the words you most want to remember from this unit)	Expressions and phrases I liked (any expressions or phrases you think sound nice, useful or funny)	English I heard or read outside class (e.g. from websites, books, adverts, films, music)
	Managerge a Profession Specific et	

SELF-CHECK

Vocabulary

Choose	the	odd	one	out.
--------	-----	-----	-----	------

1 Fruit: garlic

> grapes pear

2 Drinks:

smoothie cream

lemonade

3 Meat and fish: beef

tuna

Sweets and snacks:

nuts cheese

crisps

5 Vegetables and salad: cucumber

ice cream

honey lettuce

6 Flavours:

coconut mint flour

2 Choose the correct option.

- 1 Our school is in a modern build / building.
- 2 Jenny Sharp is the best contestant / competition on the show.
- 3 Who will win / winner the prize?
- 4 Please hurry up and make / do your homework!
- 5 I don't know what to do I can't make / do a decision.
- 6 Don't worry about winning just make / do your best.
- 7 Oh, I love this vanilla ice cream it's delicious / bland!
- 8 We've got some lovely rich / fresh lettuce for the salad.

Grammar

3	Complete the sentences with the Present
	Perfect form of the verbs in brackets

1	Don't worry, the filmstart/yet).		
2		(you/ try/ever) chilli	
	chocolate?	W = 1, - 2, - 3	

3	Come in - we	(finish/just
	eating.	

4	I	(see/never)	Tim	so	angry
	before!				0 ,

5	(it/stop/r	aining/yet)
-	(10,000)	a

4	Choose	the	correct	answers.

1	I've there one	been to New York and day.	, but I'd love to go
	a just	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	c never
2	James is a compe	really happy – he's tition!	won
	a yet	b just	c ever
3	I haven't	finished my homew	ork
	a yet	b already	c just
4		t need to invite Sam vited him.	n to the party – I've
	a ever	b yet	c already

5 Complete the sentences with for or since.

1	My uncle has lived in Spain	tw	vo years
2	Poor Sara has been ill	last Sa	turday.
3	There has been a school here		1984.
4	I've known Sama	long time.	

6 Complete the sentences with the Present Perfect or Past Simple form of the verbs in brackets.

1	1	(visit) Paris a few times. It's a lovely
	city.	
2	We	(not go) away on holiday last year.
3	Everyone	(enjoy) the meal last night.
4	A new café	(open) near our school.
5	1	(write) an email to Max three days
	ago, but he	(not reply) yet.
6	1	(never/have) a chocolate smoothie,
	but I	(try) a coconut smoothie last
	summer.	

Speaking language practice

7 Complete the dialogues with the phrases below. There is one extra phrase.

could I have excuse me nearly of course thank you would you like

1	A:	Are you ready to order?
	B:	. We'll be ready in a minute.
2	A:	Can I get you something to drink?
	B:	a lemonade, please?
3	A:	Excuse me, can I have some water, please?
	B:	serve twentwent temporer.
4	A:	anything to eat?
	B:	Could I have a toasted sandwich, please?
5	A:	Here you are.

1 Match the words below with the pictures.

BBQ ribs chicken tikka masala fish and chips hot dogs pepperoni pizza sushi





1 hot dogs







3





5

6

- 2 Match the foods in Exercise 1 with these countries.
 - the USA India the UK Japan
- 3 Complete the sentences with the words below.

afternoon tea cuisines flavours gourmet national-dish recipe takeaway meal

- 1 Chicken tikka masala is now the UK's national dish!
- 2 Many British people only have a ______ for lunch.
- 3 Indian cuisine is full of spicy
- 4 A traditional British ______ is great. It has delicious cakes and sandwiches.
- 5 burger restaurants are expensive.
- 6 You can try different _____ from all over the world at the Zaza Bazaar restaurant.
- 7 I love lots of dishes, but I don't know the ______, so I don't know how to make them!

- 4 Match photos A-D with sentences 1-4. Then complete the sentences with the verbs below.
 - frying serving shopping for tasting









1	D	Lynn is frying	food at the market.
2		Anjum is	food in Liverpool.
3		Anjum is kitchen.	food in Lynn's
4		Anjum is market.	food in the

- 5 Make sentences in the Present Perfect.
 - Lynn / never / cook / Indian food / before
 Lynn has never cooked Indian food before.
 - 2 she / not / make / any mistakes / yet
 - 3 she / never / cook / outside
 - 4 she / learn / a lot about Indian cuisine
 - 5 they / raise / a lot of money for charity
- 6 Choose the correct option.
 - 1 You can find a total /wide range of Indian food in Liverpool.
 - 2 There's a *large / long* community of Keralan people there.
 - 3 They attend a global / local farmers' market.
 - 4 Anjum teaches Lynn three traditional / modern dishes.
 - 5 Kerala is a primary / popular holiday destination.

7 Read the video script. Underline any words or phrases you don't know and translate them into your language.

Indian food Liverpool style Part 1 This is Anjum Anand. She's a food writer and a chef born in London, but of Indian origin. In this series she travels to different cities in the UK to find a wide range of Indian food and flavours. She also teaches inexperienced 5 cooks how to make great Indian food. In this programme she's in Liverpool, where there's a large community from the Southern Indian state of Kerala. She meets Lynn Mitchell, who works for a hospital in the city. The plan is to take part in a local farmers' market to raise money for charity. Lynn wants to sell Indian food at the market. The 10 problem is that Lynn has never cooked Indian food, so it's going to be a real challenge. Kerala is in the south-west of India and is a popular holiday destination for British people. A lot of Keralan people have come to Liverpool in the last ten years to look for work. There are now over one thousand families there. 15 Anjum is going to teach Lynn three traditional Keralan dishes - coconut chicken with ginger, which has a lovely sweet flavour, delicious salmon wraps with curry leaves and finally, rice noodles. Keralan specialities include a lot of fruit and fish. The cuisine is very light and healthy compared to other Indian food. 20 In Liverpool it's easy to find the ingredients for these dishes - Anjum can find all the fruit, vegetables and spices that she needs in special Keralan shops. Part 2 First, Lynn chops and fries up all the ingredients. When the dishes are ready, Anjum tries them. They are really tasty! Lynn hasn't made any mistakes yet. 25 'Mmm, that's amazing!' 'Oh good, oh good!' 'That's perfect!' 'Oh fantastic!' Now they're both ready to take the food to the market with Lynn's daughter. 30 More than 5,000 people visit Liverpool's monthly farmers' market. Indian food is very popular but the question is, will the local people like these Keralan specialities? At first, things are not easy - people are not sure. It's the first time Lynn has ever cooked outside and she's very nervous. But then things change -35 people seem to love the food and soon all of it has gone! 'Beautiful!' 'Mmm, tastes lovely!' 'That is excellent - but very hot!' Since she began this project, Lynn has learnt a lot about cooking Indian food 40 and they have raised lots of money for charity. Lynn's really, really happy!

So, what do the British really eat? Keralan food – at least in Liverpool they do!



up!

VOCABULARY

Types of film | Film and TV | Compound nouns

GRAMMAR

Comparatives and superlatives Quantifiers

READING

Matching

LISTENING

Identifying specific details Multiple choice

SPEAKING

Talking about preferences

ENGLISH IN USE

Adverbs of manner

BBC CULTURE

How do you like to celebrate?

17	comedy	6 ctn			
2	dm_ny	7 fy te			
3	acn fm	8 tll_r			
	sf	9 r_mt_c fm			
5	fty	-			
2 (Read the descriptions are ords in Exercise 1.	nd write the types of films. Use the			
1	It's a beautiful love story. ro	mantic film			
2					
3					
4	It's a really interesting film about lions.				
5	It's a traditional children's st	ory about a princess.			
6					
7	There are some amazing car chases.				
/					
8	It takes place in an imagina magic powers.	ry world, where people have			
	magic powers.	now what was going to happen!			
8	magic powers.	now what was going to happen!			
9	magic powers. It was so exciting – I didn't k	now what was going to happen!			
8 9 8 •	magic powers. It was so exciting – I didn't k Match questions 1–4 with a C What's your favourite	now what was going to happen! Inswers a-d. a Daniel Craig is the			
8 9 3 1	magic powers. It was so exciting – I didn't k Match questions 1–4 with a What's your favourite film?	now what was going to happen! Inswers a-d. a Daniel Craig is the main character. b It's very exciting.			
8 9 1 2	magic powers. It was so exciting – I didn't k Match questions 1–4 with a What's your favourite film? What's it about?	now what was going to happen! Inswers a-d. a Daniel Craig is the main character. b It's very exciting.			

about comedy favourite like who's

B: It's about a bear that goes to London.

B: Yes, my I favourite film is Paddington. Some parts of it are

B: Hugh Bonneville is Henry. He's the man who looks after

? Is it funny?

computer generated, but some of the characters are real actors.

A: Do you like watching films?

_ in it?

B: Yes, it's very funny. It's a brilliant 5

A: What's it 2_

Paddington. A: What's it 4_

5 NORD BUILDING Complete the table.

Verb	Noun	Person
act	¹ action	2
3	entertainment	entertainer
produce	4	producer
perform	performance	5

6 Choose the correct option.

- 1 This film is great entertain / entertainment) for all the family.
- 2 I think Zac Efron is a brilliant act / actor.
- 3 I'd love to work as a film producer / production.
- 4 I'd be too scared to perform / performer in front of thousands of people.
- 5 It isn't easy to become a successful entertainer / entertain.
- 6 It takes a lot of work to production / produce a film.

7 Match 1-8 with a-h to make sentences.

- 1 d The main character in the film
- 2 | I can't wait to see the next
- The show was an instant
- 4 When did the story first appear
- 5 A new sci-fi
- 6 The film has some amazing special
- 7 His first film got some great
- 8 The TV audience
- a hit everyone loved it!
- b loved the show.
- c reviews when it came out.
- d is a fifteen year old boy.
- e episode in the series.
- f series is starting tonight.
- g effects.
- h on our TV screens?

audience character episode hit reviews screens series special effects

- 1 The film uses some amazing special effects to give you the feeling that you are in space.
- 2 The show is especially popular with a young TV
- Who is your favourite ______ in the Lord of the Rings films?
 The film got some bad ______ online, but I really liked it.
- 5 The new _____ of X Factor starts next week.
- 6 The producers were really happy that the show was such
- 7 I want to get home quickly to see tonight's _____ of
- 8 My dad is always complaining that everything on our TV is rubbish!

9 000 Complete the text with one word in each gap.

What's on tonight?

Our reviewers give their suggestions for the best shows on TV tonight.

Hot and Cold

Channel 3, 6,30

A 1documentary about how animals live in the hottest and coldest places in the world. Great for all the family.

Maxwell Street

BTV. 7.30

Is Kerry in danger? Don't miss this week's 3 of this exciting drama 4 It isn't surprising that Maxwell Street is such a big 5_ - the story is great and the Damien Green, is brilliant as Jake, the lovable hero.

Don't call me

The Movie Channel, 8.00 If you like ⁷______films, make sure you watch this amazing love story. Carrie Taylor gives a great 8 as Emma, the main ⁹ in the film. What's it 10 ? Well, if want to know the story, I suggest you watch the film! It had very good 11 when it first came out in cinemas and it's great to see it now on our TV 12_



Comparatives and superlatives

I can compare different things.

Complete the sentences with the comparative or superlative form of the adjectives in brackets.	4 Decide if the sentences in each pair have the same meaning (S) or a different meaning (D).
1 I think the second film is <u>better</u> (good) than the first one.	1 D a Jack isn't as old as his brother.
2 The (funny) part was when he fell in the swimming pool.	b Jack and his brother are the same age.
3 I think that having a good story is (important) than having famous actors.	2 a The new cinema is bigger than the old one.
4 These are the (uncomfortable) seats I've ever sat on!	b The old cinema isn't as big as the new one.
5 Going to the cinema is (exciting) than watching a film at home.	a The tickets are too expensive.b The tickets are cheap enough.
6 That's the (bad) film I've ever seen - it was awful!	4 a It's the most exciting film ever! b No film is as exciting as this one
Choose the correct answers.	5 a These new seats are as uncomfortable as the old ones.
1 That film was! also scary be enough scary c as scary as	b The old seats were more comfortable.
2 The main character isn't a enough good-looking b good-looking enough	a It isn't warm enough.b It's too cold for us.
c good-looking as	5 Complete the posts with the correct form of the adjectives in brackets
These seats aren't the others. a as expensive as	correct form of the adjectives in brackets
b expensive as c too expensive as	• • •
4 You're to see that film.	Has anyone seen a 4D film? I saw one last night and it was 1the best (good) experience of my
5 The actors weren't for me to hear.	life! It was definitely much ² (exciting) a normal film.
 a too loud b enough loud c loud enough 6 Our TV screen is yours. a too big as b big enough as c as big as 	I saw a 4D film last week, but it wasn't (good) I expected. The moving seats were 4 (uncomfortable) for
Find and correct the mistakes in the sentences. One sentence is correct.	seats were ⁴ (uncomfortable) for me to relax and enjoy the film.
Action films are more exciting that romantic films! Action films are more exciting than romantic films!	I loved the special effects! Feeling the wind on my face during the car chase made it
2 It's funniest film I've ever seen!	5 (scary) as driving fast in a real car. And the bangs on my seat when the character
The second part of the film was worse than the first part.	were fighting were ⁶ (realistic) to make me jump – it was great!
The seats here aren't too big as our chairs at home.	I tried to see a 4D film last week, but I was with my little sister and she wasn't ⁷ (old)
5 The music in the film was too much loud.	to watch the film. She wasn't as ⁸ (disappointed) I was because I took her for a pizza
6 Most documentaries aren't enough interesting.	instead!



READING and VOCABULARY

A theatre evening

I can understand the main points of an article and talk about entertainment.

1 Complete the sentences with the words below.

costume make-up mime puppets stage

- 1 I was really scared when I walked onto the stage for the first time.
- 2 They control the by pulling strings attached to their arms and legs.
- 3 It takes ages to put the on my face before a show.
- 4 The traditional for women is a brightly coloured dress.
- show, so the actors don't speak at all.

2 Match 1-6 with a-f to make sentences.

- c Harriet wants to do
- Sam told us
- 3 Would you like to watch
- The film got
- 5 She'd love to star
- I'm too shy to go
- a very good reviews. d on stage.
- b in a film. e the show with us?
- c a dance workshop. f an amazing story.

3 Read the texts and the reviews. Match each person with the best play for them. There is one extra review.

I'm not into classic theatre. I prefer smaller theatres and modern plays, which deal with important issues that are relevant today. I'm not particularly interested in seeing well-known actors - I can see them on TV any time. I prefer to see young actors.

Beth

I prefer traditional theatre, especially plays by the great writers like Shakespeare. I love seeing famous actors who really know how to act well. I enjoy both big and small theatres, and my favourite is open air theatre.

Anna

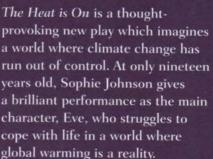
I'm not keen on small theatres and serious plays. I love the excitement of a really big theatre and I'm a big fan of musicals. I especially love shows with well-known singers in them.

A The Fall of Rome

Stanley Ibotson is excellent in this new adaptation of this classic eighteenth century drama. The production has won praise from both audiences and critics, and the outdoor setting of Graymore Hall is perfect for the dramatic battle scenes. There are some wonderful performances, especially by Ibotson, who is returning to live theatre after two years in TV dramas.



B The Heat is On





This is slapstick comedy at its best! It was voted Best New Comedy earlier this year, and has delighted audiences up and down the country. First shown in Sheffield, it has now moved to the Royal Theatre, one of the biggest theatres in the West End. A great success for young writer Tom Clancy, and definitely worth seeing!



D Don't Stop Dancing!

Celine is definitely a big hit in this spectacular show at the Abbey Theatre. The show is full of colour, with beautiful costumes, great music and some amazing dance routines. Celine's decision to develop a career in the theatre after the break-up of her band disappointed some of her fans, but she's certainly winning over plenty of new ones now. Don't miss it!

GRAMMAR

Quantifiers: some, any, much, many, (a) few, (a) little, a lot of, lots of

nd ui

	ountable ouns	Uncountable nouns	Countable and uncountable nouns
a	few		
	Choose th	ne correct option	on.
1	How much	(many cousing	s have you got?
2		/ many food d	
3	I've got so	me / any new je	eans.
4	She doesn	't have some /	any jewellery.
5	Are there	some / any festi	vals in your town?
6	Tara has g	ot a little / a lot	of friends.
•	Match 1-4	4 with a-d to m	ake sentences.
1	c Can y	ou wait a few	
2	-	up - we've got	very little
3	distance .	are very few	
4	I can I	end you a little	
а	time befor	e the show star	ts.
b	money if y		
C		m nearly ready	
d	festivals in	this area - only	y one or two.
	Read th	ne dialogue. Ch	oose the correct
an	iswers.		
A:		Would you like t	
		the Notting Hill	
B:	Oh yes, ple	ease. Is it a big	
A:		people take po	
A:		people! Look, to nal costume.	that's me, wearing
B:			play in a band?
	Yes, I've go	The second second second	ally nice photos of
	the band		, p
B:	It must be those peo	great fun to pla ple.	ay in front of all
۸.			ssful. We had very
Α.			
۸.	a bit nervo	time to practise	e this year, so I was

	,	/,	/	, (-)		,	., .	
ncou	ınto	able no	uns					
1 2 3 4 5 6 7	(a) a a a a a	some lots of Much few little much little	b b b b b b	any a lot of A little a few a little few few te the em	C C C C C	few many Lots any few any many	d d d d	lots much Lots of much a few lots a few
* •		944					(6	
From:		Anita; ottie;						-3
wii sh in Yo we 4_ wh cld the sh be fool I h	Il be ould Leid Leid Leid Leid Leid Leid Leid Lei	of many lates there of the search of many lates to compare the search of	wha sport of the s	a ⁷ in the stre me! I alway	y bij	the g celebra u don't had to very ditional command ays go out off fireword money lovely trained to the celebra and the celebra	em, stion ave loth rm tint rks.' toccaditi	to es, You onal
about Diwali, and there isn't ⁸ time to wait now - just a few more days! See you soon, I hope! Anita								

6 Match questions 1–3 with answers a–c.	OUT of class
1 How long does it take to put your costume on?	
2 How many people come festival?	to the
3 How do you fix the flowera Lots. b Like this. c A	

A: Actually, we made very 7_

was really pleased.

mistakes - I

4.5

LISTENING and VOCABULARY

A drama festival

I can identify specific detail in speech and talk about festivals.

1	Match 1–5 with a–e to make sentences.	4 13 Listen to Max and Jess talking about the festival. Choose the correct answers.	
	1 d The festival celebrates all aspects of		
	country 2 We really enjoyed our summer	1 Why did Jess take part in this workshop? a Her teacher recommended it.	
	3 I love carnival	b Her friend Rosie invited her.	
	Sussessi	c She enjoyed a drama lesson at school.	
	torond 9 - 9 - 1 - 1	2 What did she learn about mime?	
	a cake – it was delicious!	a You use your face and your body to show	
	b dress on Saturday.	your feelings.	
	c vacation in Mexico.	b It's best if you show your real feelings.	
	d life.	c You have to show feelings very strongly.	
	e music and all the colourful costumes.	3 What happened at lunchtime? a Jess felt ill.	
2	Complete the sentences with compound nouns	b A girl had an accident.	
	using one word from each list below.	c The teacher decided to play the main	
	I south fourth street	character.	
	country family straw square summer		
	clothes dance hat party music	4 What problem was there in the final show?	
		a The music was too loud.	
	1 Some people got up to do a <u>square dance</u>	b Some of the actors forgot their costumes.	
	when the music started.	c The lights didn't work properly.	
	2 Last winter we organised a big	5 What did Jess enjoy the most?	
	to celebrate my granddad's birthday. About fifty of my relations were there.	a The final show.	
	3 It's very hot in Spain, so bring plenty of	b Learning some dance moves.	
	with you when you come to visit.	c Meeting new people.	
	4 It was a hot day and Lily was wearing	5 13 Complete the sentences with the	
	aon her head.	words in the box. Listen again and check.	
	5 I love dancing to Everyone can		
	join in!	artists lights moves teacher workshops	
3	12 Listen to part of a radio programme.	1 Rosie is always inviting me to go to drama	
	Tick (/) the events that are taking place during	with her.	
	the festival.	2 We've got this new drama at school.	
	1 dance workshops	3 The make-up did a great job.	
	2 drama workshops	4 The only thing that went wrong was the stage	
	3 live performances	E. Thou tought us some really good dance	
	4 talks by actors	5 They taught us some really good dance	
	5 opportunities to perform on stage	***************************************	
	6 theatre make-up workshops		
	hoven!		

SPEAKING

Talking about preferences

I can ask about, express and explain preferences.

	Order the words to make sentences.
	<pre>1 you / rather / on / Saturday / what / do / would /?</pre>
	What would you rather do on Saturday?
	2 prefer / go / to / I'd / shopping
	3 film / this / very / sounds / funny
	you / where / go / would / rather / on holiday / ?
ļ	tonight / prefer / what / do / to / you / would / ?
(rather / I'd / film / at home / watch / a
ŀ	Complete the sentences with the words pelow. There is one extra word.
	do look(x2) rather prefer sounds would
1	Mmm, those pizzas <i>look</i> good.
2	2 There are two comedies on. Which one
	would you to go to?
3	I'd have something to eat first and then go to the cinema.
4	The puppet show boring!
5	Which event you prefer to go to this afternoon?
	All the above
C	All the shows great – it's difficult to choose.
	to choose. Choose the correct responses.
C	to choose. Choose the correct responses.
C	to choose. Choose the correct responses. How was the music workshop?
C	to choose. Choose the correct responses. How was the music workshop? a I'd prefer to do the dance workshop.
C	to choose. Choose the correct responses. How was the music workshop? a I'd prefer to do the dance workshop. (b) Great! I loved it! c What would you rather do?
1	to choose. Choose the correct responses. How was the music workshop? a I'd prefer to do the dance workshop. (b) Great! I loved it! c What would you rather do? I'd rather see the puppet show. a How was it?
1	to choose. Choose the correct responses. How was the music workshop? a I'd prefer to do the dance workshop. (b) Great! I loved it! c What would you rather do? I'd rather see the puppet show. a How was it? b What would you prefer to see?
1	to choose. Choose the correct responses. How was the music workshop? a I'd prefer to do the dance workshop. (b) Great! I loved it! c What would you rather do? I'd rather see the puppet show. a How was it?
1	to choose. Choose the correct responses. How was the music workshop? a I'd prefer to do the dance workshop. (b) Great! I loved it! c What would you rather do? I'd rather see the puppet show. a How was it? b What would you prefer to see? c OK. Cool! Let's do that.
2	to choose. Choose the correct responses. How was the music workshop? a I'd prefer to do the dance workshop. (b) Great! I loved it! c What would you rather do? I'd rather see the puppet show. a How was it? b What would you prefer to see? c OK. Cool! Let's do that.
2	to choose. Choose the correct responses. How was the music workshop? a I'd prefer to do the dance workshop. (b) Great! I loved it! c What would you rather do? I'd rather see the puppet show. a How was it? b What would you prefer to see? c OK. Cool! Let's do that. Where would you rather eat?
2	to choose. Choose the correct responses. How was the music workshop? a I'd prefer to do the dance workshop. (b) Great! I loved it! c What would you rather do? I'd rather see the puppet show. a How was it? b What would you prefer to see? c OK. Cool! Let's do that. Where would you rather eat? a I'd prefer a pizza restaurant.

a Definitely the comedy workshop.

b Yeah, it sounds great.

c Why not?

J 14	Complete the dialogue with sentences				
	ere is one extra sentence. Listen and check				
	This is a great festival, isn't it?				
amsın:	Yeah, there are so many good workshops. ¹ d				
lark:	It was really good. I definitely want to spend more time playing my guitar.				
amsin:					
lark:	I'm not sure. ³ And I don't really like hip hop!				
amsin:	OK. Let's see what else there is. 4 Do you want to do another workshop?				
ark:	⁵ Are there any concerts on?				
amsin:	Yes, there's a rock band playing at two o'clock.				
ark:	OK, why don't we go and watch the band and then get something to eat after that?				
msin:	6I'm really hungry!				
ark:	OK. Cool! Let's do that. There are some really nice-looking burgers over there!				
That	sounds fun.				
	would you rather do?				
	ther have something to eat now.				
	was the music workshop?				
d How was the music workshop? e I'm not into rock music.					
I'd pr	efer to listen to some music.				
	ot mad about dancing.				
	-g. The lark: lark				

5	se	nte	r the words in a-b to make nces. Then use the sentences mplete dialogues 1–2.	S
	а	sin	ging / mad / I'm / about / not	
	b	sou	unds / interesting / it / really	
	1	A:	Do you want to go to that talk about animals in the theatre?	
		B:	Yeah	
	2	A:	There's a choir workshop on later. Do you want to try it?	
		B:	No	

4.7

I can describe how people do things.

ENGLISH IN USE

1 v	Write the adverbs.	5 Complete the second sentence so that it means
1	clear - clearly 5 good	the same as the first sentence. Use no more than three words.
2	2 loud 6 straight	
3	3 safe 7 angry	 Serena is a very fast eater at meal times.
4	1 happy 8 early	Serena <u>eats very fast</u> at meal times.
_		2 No one in our class can swim faster than
	Complete the sentences with adverbs	George.
t	formed from the adjectives below.	George can in our class.
I	eareful fast hard late loud patient	3 In your exam, please be polite when you answe the questions.
1	Carry the drink <u>carefully</u> so you don't	In your exam, please answer
	spill it.	4 Don't go anywhere else on your way home.
2	2 Everyone else was there at eight o'clock,	Go home.
	but Sam arrived, as usual!	5 Mike didn't arrive on time, as usual!
3	My leg hurts, so I can't walk very	Mike arrived, as usual!
4	4 Make sure you speak so that	6 Let's be patient while we wait for the others.
	everyone can hear you.	Let's for the others.
5	My parents are always telling me that	
	I should work at school.	6 Read the email. Choose the correct answers.
6	5 They waited for over three hours!	
		× · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
3 (Choose the correct option.	From: Ellie;
1	We (finished the job quickly) / finished	To: Libby;
	quickly the job and went home.	Hi Libby,
2	2 Dana sings beautifully / beautifully sings	I did a circus skills course last week. It was ¹
19	and she can dance too.	fun! First, we tried juggling with three balls, and
3	3 He walked out and shut angrily the door /	I learned that quite 2 In fact, everything was
	shut the door angrily.	going very ³ until I tried riding the unicycle –
	4 Please speak clearly / clearly speak.	you know, the bike with only one wheel. I think I
	5 He always loudly plays music / plays music	fell off so many times because I was trying to ride
500	loudly when he's at home.	4 than everyone else. It seems that if you ride a
(6 Why do you always slowly walk / walk	bit 5, it's easier to stay on. Anyway, I'm now in
	slowly?	hospital with a broken ankle, so I guess I'll just have to
4	Complete the sentences with the	wait ⁶ until I'm better!
	comparative or superlative form of the	Come and see me soon!
	adverbs in brackets.	Ellie
-		
	1 My brother works <u>harder</u> (hard) than me at school.	1 @ great
		1 a great c greatest
•	2 Kevin arrived (early) than everyone else.	b greatly d the most greatly
	3 My mum drives (safely)	2 a quick c quicker
•	than my dad.	b quickly d more quickly
	4 They all had a competition to see who	3 a good c well
4	could run(fast).	b better d best
		4 a slow c the slowest
	5 Do children here behave (politely) than in other countries?	b slowly d more slowly
		5 a quick c safe
(6 Everyone in our class works hard, but Dan works (hard).	b faster d more careless
	works (nara).	6 a patient c more patient
		b patiently d most patiently



SELF-ASSESSMENT

For each learning objective, tick (/) the box that best matches your ability.

c = I understand and can help a friend.

= I understand but have some questions.

= I understand and can do it by myself.

= I do not understand.

		\odot	(8	88	Need help?	Now try
4.1	Vocabulary					Students' Book pp. 46–47 Workbook pp. 42–43	Ex. 1–2, p. 51
4.2	Grammar					Students' Book p. 48 Workbook p. 44	Ex. 3, p. 51
4.3	Reading					Students' Book p. 49 Workbook p. 45	
4.4	Grammar					Students' Book p. 50 Workbook p. 46	Ex. 4, p. 51
4.5	Listening					Students' Book p. 51 Workbook p. 47	
4.6	Speaking					Students' Book p. 52 Workbook p. 48	Ex. 6, p. 51
4.7	English in Use					Students' Book p. 53 Workbook p. 49	Ex. 5, p. 51

- 4.1 I can talk about films and television.
- 4.2 I can compare different things.
- 4.3 I can understand the main points of an article and talk about entertainment.
- 4.4 I can talk about quantities of countable and uncountable nouns.
- 4.5 I can identify specific detail in speech and talk about festivals.
- 4.6 I can ask about, express and explain preferences.
- 4.7 I can describe how people do things.

What can you remember from this unit?

New words I learned (the words you most want to remember from this unit)	Expressions and phrases I liked (any expressions or phrases you think sound nice, useful or funny)	English I heard or read outside class (e.g. from websites, books, adverts, films, music)	
	1000000		
	The second secon		

SELF-CHECK

your own.

Vocabulary	1 How much / many people went on the
 Complete the words in the sentences. We watched a brilliant s film about people building a city on Mars. Ratatouille is a c The characters are drawings, not real people. All the reviewers agree that she gave a very good p in the film. Who plays the main c in the film? The show was a big h with the people in Britain and the USA. The a clapped loudly at the end of the show. Complete the sentences with the words below. I cake dance life party toilet vacation I'm looking forward to lying on the beach in my summer Don't forget to buy some paper for the bathroom. You can do a square to this music. He doesn't enjoy country and can't wait to move to the city! You look lovely in your dress! I've never tried corn, but it sounds 	 How much / many people went on the school theatre trip? Jake's got many / lots of money! I'm sorry I haven't got some / any apple juice. There isn't much / many food left. I've seen a few / little good films this year. My dad gets very a few / little time off work. Complete the sentences with adverbs formed from the adjectives below. angry early fast good late quiet That was a great show - everyone performed very! The show starts at seven, but we need to get there to get good seats. I closed the door because I didn't want to make a noise and wake the baby. 'Why did you take my money?' he shouted I was running as as I could, but I couldn't keep up with her. I arrived at the station and missed my train.
Grammar 3 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first sentence. Use no more than	6 Complete the dialogues with the phrases below. it sounds I'd prefer I'd rather very scary where would you rather which would you prefer
three words.	A Shall we go to the cineral tanisht?
 Documentaries aren't as popular as comedies. Comedies are	A: Shall we go to the cinema tonight? B: 1 stay in and watch a film at home. A: OK. Shall we watch that new comedy? B: Yeah, 2 very funny. B
Paul is in our class. 4 The seats at the front are more expensive than the seats at the back.	A: There's a pizza restaurant on Broad Street or the burger bar on New Road. 3 go?
The seats at the back aren't the seats at the front. 5 I've never seen a better play than this one. This is I've ever seen.	B: 4 to go for a pizza. A: OK. Cool! Let's go there. C A: There's a musical on at the Key Theatre or
6 You're too young to go to the cinema on your own. You aren't go to the cinema on	a thriller at the Lady Anne Theatre. 5 to see? B: Definitely the thriller! It looks 6!

1	Match words 1–5 with words a–e to
	make word friends from the text. How
	many other word friends can you make?

1 6	traditional	а	atmosphere
2	military	b	calendar
3 [annual	С	festivities
4	cultural	d	parade
5	areat	6	events

2 Complete the sentences with the word friends in Exercise 1.

There is a mix of traditional

	where I live. I prefer the modern ones.	
2	There's a or	n New
	Year's Eve. Everybody great time.	has a
3	There are only a few i	mportant
	festivals in the	two
	or three days out of 3	65.
4	There isn't a	where
	I live because there is army base nearby.	n't an
5	The best in	my town
	are music concerts a exhibitions.	

3 Tick (✓) the sentences in Exercise 2 that are true about where you live. Change the other sentences to make them true.

4 Choose the correct option.

- The Trooping of the Colour celebrates/ parades the Queen's Birthday.
- 2 They welcome / hold the Notting Hill Carnival in London.
- 3 The Chinese New Year mentions / highlights Chinese culture.
- 4 One of the great things about Diwali is sensing / tasting traditional Indian food.

5 Match the word friends below with the photos.

British weather colourful costumes delicious food happy crowd live entertainment





1 colourful costumes





3

4



5

6 Make sentences from the video using comparatives and superlatives.

- 1 it's / large / Chinese New Year celebration outside China It's the largest Chinese New Year celebration outside China.
- ${\bf 2} \quad \hbox{the Notting Hill Carnival is / big / street festival in Europe} \\$
- 3 today the festival is / safe / than / it was in the past
- 4 the Notting Hill Carnival is a / loud / celebration / than / the Chinese New Year

7 Choose the correct option.

- A melting/ meeting pot of cultures, London is quite unique.
- 2 It's a *great / large* opportunity for Chinese businesses to make some money.
- 3 Many people come to the party over the festive / fun weekend.
- 4 People are coming together to forget their troubles / tricks.
- 5 When the party is over, the big / small clean-up begins.

Read the video script. Underline any words or phrases you don't know and translate them into your language.

Lon	don celebrates	
Part	1	
Narra	•	
7	usual time to celebrate Chinese New Year. This year is the Year of the	
	Horse. The entertainment certainly is impressive, so it's a great tourist	
5	attraction,	
Man:	I'm from Shanghai, China. We are visitors here and we happen to be here.	
	It's a quite exciting place.	***************************************
Wome	•	***************************************
	it very unique.	
10 Narra	·	
	seen. It's also the largest celebration outside China with tens of thousands	-
	of people here in Central London. It's a great opportunity for Chinese	
	businesses to make some money. With Chinatown just next door to the	
	celebrations in London's Trafalgar Square, you can enjoy a complete	***
15	Chinese experience. There is lots of singing and dancing here, as well as	***************************************
	the delicious food in Soho. As the Chinese say: 'Happy New Year!'	
Part	2	
Narro	tor: For a louder experience, come to the capital at the end of August	
	to see Londoners celebrating the Notting Hill Carnival. So, why is it so	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
20	special?	***************************************
Womo	n: The food, the music, the vibes the rain can't stop us. Let's face it.	
Womo	n: It's just the atmosphere – it's so friendly. Everybody's having such a	,
-	fantastic time.	
Man:	It's part of the culture. We're here to celebrate that culture. We're here to	
25	celebrate our people.	***************************************
Narra	tor: For fifty years, people have celebrated UK Caribbean culture with all of	
	the features that make Carnival so unique. There are colourful costumes,	
	great live music performances and lots of partying in the streets. Even	
	the typical British summer weather – light rain and a few clouds – can't	
30	stop these people having a good time! It's now the biggest street festival	
	in Europe, with more than a million people coming to the party over the	Market 1997
	festive weekend - both tourists and locals.	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
People	e: Welcome to the final day of the Notting Hill Carnival!	
Narra	participation and make make you can expect	
35	modern dance music and a great diversity in the crowd too. In fact, there	
	are people of all ages here, coming together to forget their troubles and	
	have a great time!	·
	To make sure everyone is safe, there are 7,000 police officers here to	
	patrol the event. But today the festival is much safer than it was. It's a	**************************************
40	shame that it's only two days long. When the party is over on Sunday night,	
	the big clean-up begins!	



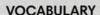
VOCABULARY

Sports and sporting events

I can talk about sports and sports events.

1 🌑 Look at the pictures and complete the words.

The big match!



Sports | Sporting events

GRAMMAR

The future: will / going to / Present Continuous | First Conditional

READING

Completing information from texts True/False

LISTENING

Multiple choice

SPEAKING

Talking about plans

WRITING

Notes with requests

BBC CULTURE

Where do they toss the caber?







1 badminton







4 d

5





7 h

8 s

- 1 It's a really exciting sport. You use a paddle to move through the water. kayaking
- 3 I play this sport for my school team. You can throw the ball to other people or you can run and bounce the ball on the ground. You score points by throwing the ball through a hoop.
- 5 The ball you use for this sport is very small. You hit it across a table.

- 2 This is a very relaxing sport. You move your body slowly into different positions. It's good for stretching your muscles.
- 4 You need to be strong to do this sport. You use your arms to pull yourself up the side of a mountain.
- 6 I love animals, so this is my favourite sport. You have to wear a special hat to protect your head if you fall off.

3		WORD FRIENDS Match 1-5 with a-e to make					
	sentences.						
	1	d I sometimes go a karate - he loves l've decided to martial arts!					
		take b volleyball at school.					
	3	My brother does c up gymnastics.					
	4	I have skiing d walking with my					
	5	I sometimes friends.					
		play e lessons in the winter					
ļ		Choose the correct words to complete the					
	se	ntences.					
	1	Would you like to play / do yoga?					
	2	I want to take / get up a new sport this year.					
	3	A lot of my friends go / play skiing in the winter.					
	4	Do you have / do a tennis lesson every week?					
	5	I sometimes go / play handball with my friends.					
	6	You need to be very fit to do / play gymnastics.					
;	•	Complete the words in the sentences.					
	1	We get changed in the changing rooms					
		before the game.					
	2	Our team wears a blue and white k					
	3	The second secon					
	100	onto the pitch with the players.					
	4	There were over 50,000 people in the s m for the big match.					
	5	Our s s were right at the front, so we could					
	J	see the players really well.					
	6	At the end of the game, the sbc said 12–8 to my team!					
	•	Complete the dialogue with the words below					
	Th	ere is one extra word.					
		form and the state of the state					
	I	fans goal kit match pitch score team					
	A:	Wow! That was a really exciting football ¹ <i>match</i> ! I'm glad our ² won in the end.					
	B:	Yes. I was a bit worried at half time when the					
	٥.	was 1-0 to the other team, but then					
		Juan Fernandez scored that amazing					
		4!					
	A:	Yes. That gave our players a lot of confidence.					
		And the ⁵ all got really excited when					
		he scored another one!					
	B:	Yeah. A few people tried to run onto the					
		6to celebrate, but of course, you					

aren't allowed to do that!

7 Complete the email with one word in each gap.

rom: Gary; To: Polly;
Hi Polly, I can't believe I'm here at the Olympic Games! On Tuesday we watched the Itable tennis. It's amazing how hard they hit the ball at each other across the table! Then we had tickets to watch the 2 I can't believe how high up they are before they drop down into the water! Our 3 were quite close to the pool, so we got a good view. It looks really scary, so it isn't a sport I ever want to 4 up. On Wednesday we saw a bit of karate. It looks like a really fun sport. A few of my friends 5 karate already, so I might ask them where they 6
lessons. Maybe I'll go along with them. Yesterday we watched some 7 matches. The players are amazing – the way they run, bouncing the ball on the ground – and they can throw it into the net from the halfway line! I was supporting the 8 USA. I can't remember what the final 9 was, but I know the USA won quite easily. It was great being part of a big crowd of sports 10 We all cheered when one of our players 11 some more points. Anyway, I definitely want to do more sport when I get back home on Friday. Let's 12 swimming on Saturday! Gary

5.2 GRAMMAR

The future: will / going to / Present Continuous

I can talk about plans, predictions, arrangements and timetables.

	atch the verbs in bold in senter ions a–f.	nces 1-6 with 4	Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first
1 C 2	Off you go. I'm sure you'll hav Don't worry, I'll do the washin		sentence. Use no more than three words. 1 Nick's plan is to get a part-time job.
3	I'm meeting Sam this afterno		Nick is going to get part-time job.
4	I'm going to get fit this year!		2 What's the closing time at the gym?
5	Look - it's going to rain.		What timeclose?
6	The film starts at 7.30.		3 What's your prediction for the
a an	arrangement		final score?
	timetable		What do you think the final score
	orediction made at the momen	t of speaking	?
	orediction based on what we kr		4 What time is your meeting with the head
	decision made at the moment of		teacher?
	plan		What time are the head teacher?
. o c	hoose the correct option.	5	Choose the correct option.
	ey're a very good team – I think ey win today.	(they'll win)/	
	ey wirt today. urry up – the train leaves / will le	ave in fifteen	MESSAGES
	inutes!	ave in inteen	Hi. Mia ¹ comes / is coming round to my
3 ls	your bag heavy? Wait, I help / I'l	ll help you.	house this evening to watch a film. Do you
4 1'11	go / I'm going on holiday on So	iturday.	want to come?
	eddie <i>will join / is going to join</i> a o more training.	gym so he can	What film ² will you / are you going to watch?
	careful on that ladder - you're	going to fall /	
	u fall.	gomg to jun ,	The new James Bond film. I think you 3 enjoy / 'll enjoy it.
answ	Read the dialogue. Choose th	e correct	OK. My tennis lesson ⁴ finishes / will finish at 5.30, so I can come after that.
	, James. What are your plans fo	r the weekend?	
			Great! Mia ⁵ is going to order / orders some
	B: Well, I 1 football on Saturday afternoon. A: Really? What time 2 the game start?		pizzas too – well, that's the plan. I need to remind her!
	three o'clock.	garrio otare.	
	ool! ³ and watch.		Cool! And 61'm going to bring / I'll bring some
	reat! I think it ⁴ an exci	tina aame.	snacks with me.
	ood. What about later? Have yo	~ ~	Great! See you later.
	ans?		
B: Ye	es, Ali ⁵ me after the go	ame. He wants	
	go to the cinema in the evening	g. Do you want	
	come with us?		OUTof
	orry, I can't. 6 dinner wi		Complete the sentences
gr	andparents at eight o'clock. Mo	dybe next week.	with the words below.
1 a	I play (b) I'm playing	c I going to play	doesn't take important thing let me
2 a	will b is	c does	1 have a quick go.
	I'll come b I come	c I'm coming	2 The is to keep your back
4 a	is b will be	c is being	straight.
5 a	calls b is going to call	c won't call	3 It long to build up your
6 a	I'm having b I'll have	c I have	strength.

READING and VOCABULARY

A sports reporter

I can identify specific detail in an article and talk about volunteering at a sports event.

1 Choose the correct option.

- 1 We were trying to get to Manchester, but we ended up / set up in London!
- 2 Will you help me pick up / tidy up the kitchen?
- 3 Jack had to give up / end up football when he hurt his knee.
- 4 I'd love to take up / set up a gymnastics club at school.
- 5 My uncle offered to pick me up / set me up from the airport.
- 6 I wanted to get fit, so I decided to pick up / take up running.

2 Read the article. Complete the form.

Na	me: George Samson	Age: 16
Sta	art date of the event: 1	
Vo	of days attending the even	ent: 2
•	Access allowed to sports h	nalls and
•	Photography allowed, but	no ⁴
•	Interview rooms available till ⁵	from 10 a.m.
•	Lunch available in the 6	

3	Read the article again. Mark the sentences	T (true)	or
	F (false).		

1		George writes articles for a local newspaper.
2	Accesses 1	He has not worked as an official press reporter
		before.
	precess	

- The sports event lasts for three days.
- George isn't going to take many photos.
- 5 He won't have to pay for food at the event.
- You can find details of the event in the school magazine.

4 Find the phrasal verbs below in the article. Then use them to complete the sentences.

check out hang out help out look out for miss out

- 1 I've volunteered to help out at a festival in my town next summer.
- 2 I meet my friends after school and we _ the park together.
- 3 Of course I'm going to Jo's party I don't want to on all the fun!
- 4 You should the new pizza restaurant in town - it's really good!
- 5 I really want to see this film I'll _____ local cinema.

My name's George Samson and I'm sixteen. I often write articles for the school magazine because I want to be a journalist when I leave school. Next week I'm going on my first trip as an official press reporter. I'm attending a sports event for disabled teenagers and I'm really looking forward to it.

The event starts on Friday 14 May and goes on for four days. I've only got entry for the Saturday and Sunday, but I'm sure there will be lots to see. I don't want to miss out on any of the excitement! As a young journalist, I can go into all the sports halls and also the swimming pool. I'm going to take my camera, of course, and I'm allowed to take as many photos

as I like – I'll probably take loads! Videos aren't allowed though. There are special interview rooms where I can talk to some of the competitors. They're only open from ten in the morning until two in the afternoon, so I'll have to be well organised! There's also a special food tent where all the journalists can get free food at lunch time, so I'll be able to hang out with some professional iournalists!

If you love sport, why not come along to the event? You can help out as a volunteer if you want. Check out the website for more details and look out for my report in next month's magazine!



GRAMMAR

First Conditional



I can talk about possible future situations.

1 0	Choose	the	correct	option
	0110000			

- 1 You enjoy / You'll enjoy gymnastics if you try / you'll try it.
- 2 If you have / you'll have some skiing lessons, you be / you'll be a very good skier.
- 3 We don't go / won't go walking unless the weather is / will be good.
- 4 You get / You'll get fitter if you join / you'll join a gym.
- 5 I call / I'll call you when I get / I'll get home.
- 6 You don't improve / won't improve unless you practise / you'll practise.

2 Omplete the sentences with if or unless.

- We'll go to the match <u>unless</u> the tickets are too expensive.
- 2 He won't lose weight _____ he doesn't do any exercise.
- 3 You won't get into the team you're very good.
- 4 We'll stop playing _____ it starts to rain.
- 5 They won't cancel the game the weather is so bad that they can't play.
- 6 They won't let you in _____ you don't have a ticket.

3 Complete the dialogue with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- A: Do you want to come ice skating with me on Saturday?
- B: Er, I haven't got any skates.
- A: I'm sure Jenna ¹will lend (lend) you hers if you ² (ask) her.
- B: But I'm worried I ³ (hurt) myself if I ⁴ (fall) over.
- A: Don't worry. You ⁵ (not get) injured if you ⁶ (be) careful.
- B: But sometimes there are loads of people there.
- A: Well, if it ⁷______ (be) very busy when we get there, we

 8 _____ (wait) until it's quieter.

 We ⁹_____ (not go) on the ice unless you ¹⁰_____ (feel) it's
- B: OK. Why not? I'll give it a go!

4	Complete the second sentence so that it means the
	same as the first sentence. Use no more than three words.

- We won't go climbing unless it's sunny.
 We will go climbing if it's sunny.
- 2 I'll pay for lunch if it isn't too expensive.
 I'll pay for lunch ______ is too expensive.
- 3 Our holiday won't be fun if the weather isn't good. Our holiday will be fun ______ is good.
- 5 We'll be there at three o'clock if our train is on time.
 We'll be there at three o'clock ______ is late.
- 6 I'll play tennis on Saturday unless I'm still ill.
 I'll play tennis on Saturday better.

5 Read the text. Choose the correct answers.

So, my climbing adventure starts today! I've got my first lesson at the Climbing Centre in my town. I'm feeling a bit nervous, but I know that the instructors will help me ¹ have any problems. I'll start on the junior climbing wall and I'll have a rope on, so I won't get hurt ² fall. There are three higher walls, but the instructors probably won't allow me to go on them ³ think I'm able to cope with them. My uncle does loads of climbing and he says that ⁴ enjoy it, he'll take me climbing with him in the mountains. I won't go with him ⁵ feel really confident though. Climbing can be a dangerous sport! Well, I must go now. My lesson starts at two and I'll be late ⁶ leave soon!

1	а	if I'll	С	unless I
	b	if I	d	if I don't
2	a	if I	C	unless I
	b	if I'll	d	if I won't
3	а	unless they'll	С	if they
		unless they	d	if they won't
4	a	unless I	С	if I won't
	b	if I'll	d	if I
5	a	if I won't	C	if I'll
	b	unless I'll	d	unless I
6	a	if I	C	unless I

b if I won't

d unless I'll

safe.



LISTENING and VOCABULARY

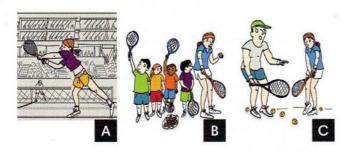
A young tennis player

I can identify specific detail in speech and talk about sports training.

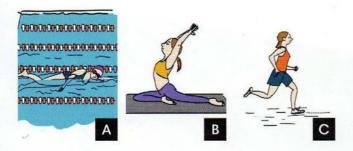
WORD BUILDING Complete the table.

Verb	Noun (action)	Noun (person)	
1train	training	2	
run	3	runner	
play	-	4	
5	practice	-	
coach	-	6	
7	race	racer	
score	8	scorer	
9	kick	-	

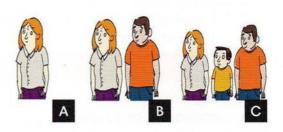
- 2 Complete the sentences with a word formed from the word in brackets.
 - 1 They do three hours of training (train) every week.
 - Rob _____ (practice) his football skills every day.
 - 3 Stella is a really good tennis ____ (play).
 - 4 All the _____ (run) looked exhausted at the end of the race.
 - 5 My uncle works as a sports (train)
 - 6 Who _____ (score) the winning goal in last week's match?
- 3 6 15 Listen to a sports report. Choose the correct answers.
 - 1 What does Anita most enjoy doing in tennis?



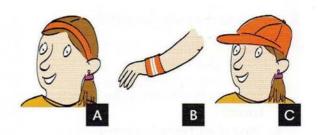
2 What form of training does Anita do every day?



3 Who always watches Anita's matches?



4 What does Anita always wear when she plays matches?



- 4 6 16 Listen to Angela and Paul talking about Anita Redway. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).
 - Angela is surprised that Anita is going to give up playing tennis.
 - Paul thinks it's better for Anita to focus on doing something that she enjoys.
 - 3 Anita already has a lot of other interests.
 - Angela thinks Anita will earn a lot of money from coaching.
 - Paul and Angela agree that Anita will be a popular coach.
 - Anita's ambition is to help another player to achieve success.



I can ask and talk about plans.

1	Match	1-6 with a-f to make sentences.
	1 [What are you up

- C What are you up
- I don't have
- 3 Have you got any
- I'm visiting my 4
- 5 What are you
- I'm going to 6
- a doing tonight?
- b grandparents on Sunday.
- c to on Saturday?
- d the cinema on Friday.
- e any plans yet.
- f plans for the weekend?

2 Complete the dialogue with the words below.

- about after first know then what
- A: What are you doing at the weekend, Laura?
- B: 1 First of all, I'm going shopping on Saturday morning. 2.... meeting some friends for lunch. What __ you? What are you doing?
- A: I don't 4_ what I'm doing yet. What about you, Sam? 5_ your plans?
- C: I'm going swimming in the morning. 6_____I'm going to a football match.

3 Choose the correct responses.

- 1 What are you up to this evening?
 - a And you?
 - (b) Nothing much.
 - c Great!
- 2 I'm going swimming on Saturday. What about you?
 - a I don't have any plans yet.
 - b Well done!
 - c Yes, OK.
- 3 I'm going to a concert this weekend.
 - a I don't know yet.
 - b Nothing much.
 - c That's nice.
- 4 First, I'm going to my tennis lesson.
 - a I don't know yet.
 - b Cool. Have you got any plans after that?
 - c Come on!

4			olete the dialogues with class			
	I	Don	't be daft! Seriously? Wish me luck!			
	1	A: B:	What are you up to later this week? I've got exams on Thursday and Friday.			
	A: I'm running a marathon next weeke B: I didn't realise you were so fit!					

17 Complete the dialogue with the words below. There are two extra words. Listen and check.

_ It's perfectly safe!

3 A: Sailing isn't dangerous, is it?

about after any could daft doing first nothing plans probably seriously then

Jen:	Have you got 'any plans for Saturday?
Leo	: Yes, I've got quite a busy day. 2,
	I'm going to football training, as usual,
	and 3 that I'm going karting with
	my uncle. Have you ever done it? You
	drive these little mini racing cars round
	a race track.
len	That sounds cool!

Leo:	Yeah.	What 4	you? What are you
	5	on Sa	turday?

Jen: 6 much. I'll 7___ do my homework in the morning, but I don't know about the afternoon.

Leo: You 8 come karting with me if you want.

Jen: 9_ ? That would be great! Won't your uncle mind?

Leo: Don't be 10_ _! Of course he won't mind.



5.7 WRITING

I can write notes and make requests.

1	Compl	ete	the	rea	uests	with	the	phrases	bel	ow.
-	COLLID	0.0		. ~ ~	acoto			Pili Goco	~~!	V

could you please look if it's OK with you let me know would it be possible would you mind

- 1 Would you mind sending me Cara's address?
- 2 We could meet at my house. _____ if that's OK.
- 3 _____ to meet at seven o'clock?
- 4 _____, could we go on Saturday morning?
- 5 _____ in your car to see if my phone's there?

2 Match 1-5 with a-e to make sentences.

- 1 b Thanks for
- 2 Just a quick note
- 3 | I had a
- 4 I really enjoyed
- 5 All the
- a great time!
- b inviting me to go sailing with you.
- c swimming in the sea.
- d best, Jo.
- e to thank you for taking me to the cinema.

3 Write the phrases below in the correct group.

Gheers! Could you please send me the photos? Hi, there Hey I had a great time skiing. I loved snowboarding. Let me know if that's OK. See you later. Thanks for your message.

Greeting	Hi Hiya		
Thanking the other person	Thanks for inviting me. Just a quick note to thank you for		
Introducing the topic	I really enjoyed taking part in the race.		
Making a request	Would you mind keeping my jacket for me? Would it be possible to send me Tim's email address?		
Ending	All the best. Bye! Cheers!		

4 Complete the message with the phrases below.

a great time cheers I loved just a quick would you mind

Неу,	
Just a qu	uick note to thank you and
your uncl	e for taking me karting last
weekend.	I had ² ! I've never
done any	thing like that before and
3	driving round the race
track as f	ast as I could! I really enjoyed
meeting y	your uncle too. He's cool!
I think I le	ft my gloves in your uncle's
car.	
4	asking him if he could have
a look for	them?
5	Ţ.
Jen	

5 Read the message. Write a note to Dave. Follow the instructions below.

I had a great weekend - Dave invited me to go kayaking with him and his uncle on the river. The water was really fast - that was exciting! And we had some races - great fun! Dave took some great photos - I must ask him to send them to me.

- 1 Use the message in Exercise 4 as a model.
- 2 Follow these steps:
 - · Start your note in a suitable way.
 - · Thank Dave for taking you kayaking.
 - · Say what you enjoyed doing.
 - · Ask Dave to send the photos to you.
 - End your note in a suitable way.



SELF-ASSESSMENT

For each learning objective, tick (/) the box that best matches your ability.

: I understand and can help a friend.

= I understand but have some questions.

= I understand and can do it by myself.

= I do not understand.

		00	\odot	8	88	Need help?	Now try
5.1	Vocabulary					Students' Book pp. 58–59 Workbook pp. 54–55	Ex. 1-2, p. 63
5.2	Grammar					Students' Book p. 60 Workbook p. 56	Ex. 3, p. 63
5.3	Reading					Students' Book p. 61 Workbook p. 57	
5.4	Grammar			-		Students' Book p. 62 Workbook p. 58	Ex. 4-5, p. 63
5.5	Listening					Students' Book p. 63 Workbook p. 59	
5.6	Speaking					Students' Book p. 64 Workbook p. 60	Ex. 6, p. 63
5.7	Writing					Students' Book p. 65 Workbook p. 61	

- 5.1 I can talk about sports and sports events.
- 5.2 I can talk about plans, predictions, arrangements and timetables.
- 5.3 I can identify specific detail in an article and talk about volunteering at a sports event.
- 5.4 I can talk about possible future situations.
- 5.5 I can identify specific detail in speech and talk about sports training.
- 5.6 I can ask and talk about plans.
- 5.7 I can write notes and make requests.

What can you remember from this unit?

New words I learned (the words you most want to remember from this unit)	Expressions and phrases I liked (any expressions or phrases you think sound nice, useful or funny)	English I heard or read outside class (e.g. from websites, books, adverts, films, music)	
	1 1		



SELF-CHECK

6 No, don't give me any money. I _____ for the

tickets.

Vocabu	lary	4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.
1 Compl	ete the sentences with the words below.	1 I fitter if I running. (get, take up)
	etball climbing diving ice-skating boarding yoga	 2 If you regularly, you into the team. (not practise, not get) 3 You the race unless you fast.
	oves team sports. He plays for the school team.	(not win, run) 4 If it, we table tennis indoors.
3 Hove	n't like going underwater, so I hate! e winter sports – is my favourite ause I love coming down the mountain ly fast!	(rain, play) 5 I at four o'clock tomorrow unless my train late. (arrive, be)
into	class, you move your body gently different positions.	5 Decide if the sentences in each pair have the same meaning (S) or a different meaning (D).
at_	sister's a good dancer, so she'd be good too.	1 a I won't call you unless there's a problem.
beco	need very strong arms to do ause you have to lift your body up the of a mountain.	 b I'll only call you if there's a problem. 2 a We'll go swimming unless it's cold. b If it's cold, we'll go swimming.
2 Choose	e the correct option.	3 a If Dan doesn't invite me to the party, I won't be upset.
pitch	couldn't play football because the h / match was too wet.	b I'll be upset unless Dan invites me to the party.
	chester United wear a red and white cot / kit.	 a I'll play in the match unless I'm ill. b I won't play in the match if I'm ill.
	fans / seats all cheered when she scored. final scoreboard / score was 4–2.	
	ke to do / play yoga.	Speaking language practice
7 John	ou have / go swimming lessons? is a really good football play / player.	6 Complete the dialogues with the words and phrases below.
ever	should <i>practise / practice</i> your skills y day. e water sports – I want to <i>take / set</i> up sking in the summer.	don't know first got any plans nothing much then up to what about your plans
Grammo	ar	A: What are you ¹ at the weekend? B: ² Just homework and watching TV, probably. ³ you?
•	ete the sentences with the verbs below.	A: 14 yet. But Eddie wants to get together. Do you want to join us?
	'Il win 'm going to take up 'm meeting 's 's going to score	B: Yeah, cool!
1 The I	library at nine o'clock tomorrow ning.	A: Have you ⁵ for Saturday? B: Yeah. ⁶ , I'm going into town to buy
tomo	t worry – I'm sure you the match orrow.	some new trainers. ⁷ I'm meeting Sam and we're going bowling. And you?
4 1	s, Ronaldo's got the ball - he! Yes! tennis next summer.	What are ⁸ ? A: I don't have any plans yet. Maybe I'll come
	film starts at eight. I Tina at half seven.	bowling with you. B: Great!

1	Match 1-6 with a-f to make wo	ord friends.	5 Match 1–5 with a–e to make sentences.
2	1 f popular a 2 huge b 3 goal c 4 physical d 5 national e 6 cultural f Complete the sentences with t Exercise 1. 1 In my country the most popular 2 However, it doesn't attract Most people watch football 3 I'm a goalkeeper. I stand be 4 The of different football in confascinating, especially in confascinating, especially in confascinating.	contact posts history competition crowds sport the word friends in ular sport is footballanymore. on television. tween the otball teams is untries like Spain or	The Highland Games The whole village The Highland Games are now People come every year here The games are about The games are
	 Football does not include as rugby, but many players do In my country the	get injured.	symbol throw weighs At most games the caber is people's
3	Match pictures A–E with verbs	1-5.	¹ favourite sport. It is the final ²
	1 E throw 3 cate 2 bounce 4 kick	hi	and a ³ of the Highland Games. The caber is about six metres long and 4 around fifty-five kilograms. Competitors have to ⁵ it, then flip it over and the caber has to land 6 If it lands absolutely 7 , it's a ⁸ throw.
•		E	 7 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. 1 If you <u>like</u> (like) sports, you <u>will love</u> (love) the Highland Games! 2 You (not know) what the Highland Games are like unless you (take) part in them.
4	Choose the correct option.	ا ا ا ا ا ا ا ا ا ا ا ا ا ا ا ا ا ا ا	3 You (see) the 'tossing the
	 In basketball you have to 60 You can't kick / throw the bo 		caber' competition if you (stay) till the last day of the games.
	3 You have to kick / throw the		(stay) till the last day of the games. 4 If you (not enjoy) sports or
	a goal.		music, you (not like) the
	4 You can't hold / kick the bal	I for a long time in most	Highland Games!
	ball games.	age to truto establ	5 If you (want) to try
	5 The goalkeeper in football h bounce the ball and hold or		something different, try the Highland Games – you (not regret) it

Read the video script. Underline any words or phrases you don't know and translate them into your language.

The Highland Games	,
Part 1	
The Highland Games are a very old tradition. They were set up as way of bringing together Scotland's historical families. They capture the cultural life and sports of this magical nation. They include the colours and symbols of a culture that almost disappeared, but is now stronger than ever. The Highland Game are a meeting place of strength, speed and celebration. Today sports grounds, farmers' fields and city parks across this country they are Scotland's very own Olympics!	on
This is the village of Ceres. It is home to Scotland's oldest Highle Games. For centuries the whole village has gathered for this annual summer celebration. For the people of Ceres, it's a day as important as. Hogmanay – New Year's Eve in Scotland – or Christmas.	and
5 Part 2	
The Highland Games are a mixture of fact and fantasy. They are a unique blend of sport and culture.	e
There is highland dancing, bagpipes and drums, and there is a series of sports too. There is usually athletics, sometimes cycli and wrestling, but always the 'heavy events'. These include the stone shot, the hammer throw and tossing the caber.	ng
At most games the caber is people's favourite sport. It's the find event and a symbol of the Highland Games. The caber is about metres long and weighs around fifty-five kilograms. Competitors have to throw it, then flip it over and the caber has to land flat. it lands absolutely straight, it's a perfect throw.	t sîx
The Highland Games are now also celebrated outside Scotland in the USA, Canada, Australia and the Far East. These games a organised by families who emigrated from Scotland. The bigge Highland Games in the world take place here, in the Blue Ridge Mountains in North Carolina. They last over four days and 22,00 people come every year to enjoy this traditional Scottish event their ancestors.	st
The Highland Games are the most visible display of Scottish ide that you can imagine. They are about competing, of course, bu they are also about community, keeping tradition alive and ma time for old friends. If you come, you won't regret it!	t .



See the world!

VOCABULARY

Types of holiday | At the hotel | Equipment

GRAMMAR

Obligation, prohibition and advice | Modal verbs for speculation

READING

True/False

LISTENING

Identifying specific details | True/False

SPEAKING

Clarifying and asking for clarification

ENGLISH IN USE

Time clauses

BBC CULTURE

Can ironing make holidays exciting?

VOCABULARY

Travel

I can talk about holidays and travelling.

- 1 Order the words to make travelling phrases.
 - 1 how / excuse / airport / do / get / me, / I / the / to / ? Excuse me, how do I get to the airport?
 - 2 train / l'd / to / buy / like / a / to / London / ticket
 - 3 me, / excuse / is / bus / a / near / there / here / station /?
 - 4 time / the / train / what / leave / does /?
 - 5 platform / what / arrive / train / does / at / the /?
- 2 Complete responses a-e with the words below. Then mate the responses with sentences 1-5 in Exercise 1.
 - end platform p.m. return service
 - a 3 Yes, it's at the end of the road.
 - b At 3.45
 - c Single or
 - d ______10.
 - There's a bus ______ every twenty minutes.
- 3 Ocmplete the words for types of holidays.
 - 1 cruise
 - 2 a_t_v__y c__p
 - 3 b___h h_l___y
 - 4 c__y b__k
 - 5 c p g t p
 - 6 s ts g h l y
 - 7 b___p__i_g h_l___y
- 4 Read the comments and write the type of holiday each person wants.
 - 1 I'd love to visit some of the monuments in ancient Egypt. sightseeing holiday
 - 2 I'd like to go to Paris for a weekend.
 - 3 My dream holiday would be to spend two weeks on a ship, visiting different places.
 - 4 I want to just lie in the sun and swim in the sea!
 - 5 I enjoy sleeping in a tent and cooking outdoors.

 Match 1-5 with a-e to make sentences. We went to the reception first, reservation. We're in a double be to check in. We met some of copool and use all the hotel facilities. You won't get a room on the third floor. Complete the review with the words below.
check out facilities floor guests pool reception
reservation single view
This is a great hotel and good value for money. The staff at the ¹ reception desk were really friendly. I made my 2 online. I was travelling on my own, so I had a ³ room. Ask for a room at the front of the hotel and on the top ⁴ http://example. There's a bit more expensive, but worth it for the ⁵ of the beach. There's a ⁶ where you can swim, but there are 300 for another day you leave, you have to ⁹ by ten o'clock. If you're late, they'll charge you for another day!
7 • Look at the pictures and complete the words.
1 swimsuit 2 r
3 t

e	Write the correct word for ach definition.
1	Men wear these to swim in. trunks
2	You use this to help you see at night. t
3	You put this on your skin so you don't burn in the sun. s
4	This is like a large bag that you can sleep in. s b
5	You wear these to protect your eyes from the sun. s
6	You show this to officials when you enter a country. p

one word in each gap.

Global Holidays

This week's special offers

Seven days on the Mediterranean

A seven-day ¹ cruise on a luxury ship. Travelling 2_ sea is always relaxing and it's even better when the ship has fantastic 3_ three cinemas and twelve different restaurants. Each morning explore foot, before setting sail for the next exciting destination.

£1,400 per person

A long weekend in New York

New York is a great place for a city . Enjoy the atmosphere of one of the world's great cities. The price includes a return 6_ New York and a double 7___ a city centre hotel.

£1,250 per person

A great value beach holiday

Spend six days lying on golden sands or swimming in clear blue seas on Kefalonia, a popular Greek island. Stay in a luxury hotel with a heated outdoor 8___ and an amazing restaurant serving real Greek food. All rooms have fantastic 9 the sea. If you fancy shopping, there's a regular bus 10_ into the nearest town.

£850 per person

6.2 GRAMMAR

Modal verbs for obligation, prohibition and advice: must, have to, ought to, should

I can talk about obligation, prohibition and advice.

1	•	Match 1–5 with a–e to make sentences.
	1	c If you're tired, you
	2	My sister's 18 now, so she
	3	There's a bus service, so we
	4	Your cousins live in Paris, so you
	5	Weigh your suitcase – it
	a	mustn't weigh more than 15 kilos.
	b	ought to visit them while you're there.
	C	should have a sleep.
	d	has to pay the full price for tickets.
	е	don't have to drive to the airport.
2		Complete the sentences with the verb rms below. There are three forms you don't red.
	I	don't have to pay must go must spend
	ı	mustn't pay mustn't worry should drink
	I	shouldn't ask shouldn't spend will have to ask
	1	You <u>mustn't worry</u> about anything – everything will be fine!
	2	We've already paid for the hotel, so we
		for anything when we get there.
	3	Madrid is a beautiful city – you really
		there.
	4	You plenty of water when you're out in the sun all day.
	5	I know I so much money on holiday,
		but I just love shopping!
	6	I'd love to go on a camping trip with you, but I my parents first.
3		Complete the second sentence so it has e same meaning as the first. Use the word in ipitals, and use between two and five words.
	1	I would advise you to look online for the best deals.
		You <u>should look online</u> for the best deals. (SHOULD)
	2	It isn't necessary to buy tickets in advance. You tickets in advance. (HAVE)
	3	You aren't allowed to take any liquids in your bag.
		You any liquids in your bag. (MUST)
	4	It will be necessary to get a bus to the hotel.
		We a bus to the hotel. (HAVE)
	5	It's a good idea to wear a sun hat when it's very hot.
		You a sun hat when it's very hot. (OUGHT)

4 Complete the text. Choose the correct verb form for each gap.

1	, .	C	1 1		1-10000
Inn	time	tov	nack	mac	DOVE
LUP	tips	U	vucn	rpuci	VEID
	1 0			1	

Travelling abroad is great fun, but there are a few
simple rules you ¹ follow. First, you
2 make sure you have all the documents
you need – that's really important. You ³
take a few simple first aid products like painkillers
and plasters. And you 4 forget your
phone! Remember to keep in touch with your
parents while you're away – you 5 phone
them every day, but you 6 to phone or
email at least once a week, otherwise they'll get
worried. Look after your money and documents
carefully while you're away. You 7 keep
your passport safe - you can face a lot of problems
if you lose it. And remember the date and time
of your flight home. If you miss your flight,
you ⁸ pay for another one, and it will
probably be expensive!

1	а	mustn't	С	won't have to
	b	don't have to	d	have to
2	а	shouldn't	С	don't have to
	b	must	d	mustn't
3	а	should	С	don't have to
	b	shouldn't	d	ought
4	a	must	С	ought to
	b	mustn't	d	
5	а	have to	С	don't have to
	b	must	d	should
6	а	mustn't	С	don't have to
	b	should	d	ought
7	a	ought	С	must
	b	mustn't	d	don't have to
8	а	should	c	have to
	b	don't have to	d	will have to

5		omp ith o	OUT of class	
	Remember to take some money with you so you can pay for the tickets.			
		В:	What do you? they were free!	I thought
	2	A:	to the second property of the second second second	
		B:	In that, I'll stay	at home.

6.3

READING and VOCABULARY

An exchange student

I can find specific detail in an article and talk about travelling.

1	word FRIENDS Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs below.	3 Read the text again. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).
	explore go learn meet plan share	 Gina didn't expect to have any problems with speaking English.
	 We're planning a trip to Australia next year. Shall we go and the old part of the city? I'd love to Chinese, but I guess it's a very difficult language! We usually on holiday in August. It's fun to make videos and them with your friends online. A backpacking holiday is a great way to people. 	 Mead is a small town in Colorado. At first, Gina didn't find it easy being at an American school. Not all the students at her high school were friendly. Gina believes you can learn about other countries as a tourist as well as when you live there. Her advice to other exchange students is to take part in lots of activities.
2	Read the article. Complete the sentences with one word in each gap.	4 Look at the words in italics in the sentences and find the word friends in the text. Then complete the
	Gina decided to go to as an exchange student.	sentences with the correct form of the verbs below. admire consult experience go on have
	2 She chose not to live in a for her exchange year.	1 It's a good idea to a guidebook before
	3 Most high schools in the USA have big	you visit a city. 2 If it's hot tomorrow, let's a barbecue.
	4 Gina was surprised that the was nice.	3 Every morning I wake up and the view from my bedroom window.
	5 She enjoyed having in the summer.	4 What's the best way to the culture of another country?
	6 She was a at her high school once.	5 Would you like to an exchange to another country?

An exchange student

We all love travelling to other countries, but how much do we really learn about the places we visit? We admire the view from our hotel room, we consult our guidebook and visit the popular tourist spots, then we return home with happy memories and 200 photos! But what's it like to live and study in another country?

Gina Rossi decided to spend a year in the USA as an exchange student. She knew the language would be difficult at first and she knew she would miss her friends back home, but she wanted to experience the real America.

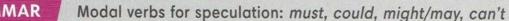
Gina stayed with a family in Mead, Colorado. 'I didn't want to go to a city,' she says. Mead is a fairly small town, so it was ideal for her. What was the first thing that she noticed in America?

'Everything was bigger,' she says. 'The houses, the schools, the shops,' Gina found school life difficult at first. The classes in most high schools are very big and you have to be quite independent. And of course, everything was in English. But the teachers were excellent and the students were all really friendly. 'They soon made me feel at home,' she says. Did anything surprise her? 'I was expecting the food to be terrible,' she says. 'But the family I stayed with enjoyed cooking, so in fact, it was really nice. In the summer, when the weather was hot, we had a lot of barbecues - I liked those.'

Gina now says that living in a place, rather than visiting as a tourist, is the only way to experience the culture of another country. And her advice



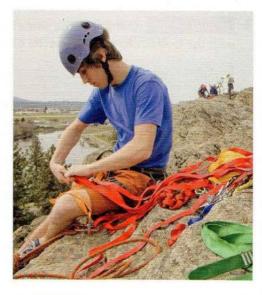
for others? 'If you decide to go on an exchange, you should join in with everything, to make the most of the experience.' Gina even joined in as a cheerleader for a high school football game – but only once!





I can speculate about the present.

	Complete the sentences with must or can't.
1	That tent's tiny! It <u>can't</u> be big enough for eight people!
2	Look, that be our hotel over there - I recognise it
	from the website.
3	The boat trips are very popular, so they be good!
4	Everyone's swimming in the sea, so the water be too cold.
5	The food in that restaurant looks amazing, so itbe expensive!
6	That be our bus – our bus isn't due until 10.30, and it's only ten o'clock.
	Choose the correct conclusion for each sentence.
1	Tom's gone home early.
	(a) He might be ill.
	b He can't be ill.
2	I'm not sure where my phone is.
	a It must be in my bag.
	b It may be in my bag.
3	Carrie's shoes are black, but these ones are brown.
	a These could be Carrie's shoes.
	b These can't be Carrie's shoes.
4	I don't know where the museum is.
7	a It might be near the station.
	b It can't be near the station.
_	
5	Everyone's wearing T-shirts. a It must be hot.
	b It can't be hot.
6	I don't know what the museum's like. The guidebook
	doesn't mention it.
	a It might be interesting. b It must be interesting.
	Choose the correct answers.
1	Look, that boy's standing up in the pool - it be
	very deep.
	a may (b) can't c must
2	I guess this be Jack's umbrella, but I'm not sure.
	a must b can't c could
3	There are hundreds of deckchairs on the beach. It
	be a very popular beach!
	a must b might c can't
4	I'm not sure if the gym is open now - it be closed.
×	a can't b may c must
5	Camping be fun in the rain – I guess everything gets horrible and wet!
	a must b can't c could
6	I don't know where he's from. I guess hebe



4 Complete the dialogue.
Choose the correct option from the pairs of phrases below.

can't be expensive / must be expensive
ean't be fun / might be fun
can't be lonely / could be lonely
can't be right / may be right
might be interested / must be interested
must be scary / can't be scary

- A: Have you seen this brochure for an activity camp?
- B: Yeah, it looks good. It ¹might be fun to go on a holiday like this next summer. What do you think?
- A: I agree. Do you think it costs a lot?
- B: No, it ² because it's for young people and they don't have much money.
- A: That's true. What activities can you do?
- B: Well, there's climbing. I don't know if I want to do that. I think it being up so high.
- A: Yes, you ⁴_____ about that, but the other activities look really good fun.
- B: Yeah, I love canoeing. Do you think Abbie ⁵______ in coming too? Should we ask her?
- A: That's a good idea. I think it's definitely better to go with friends. It 6________ if you go on your own and you don't know anyone.

French. Or maybe Spanish.

b must

c can't

a might



LISTENING and VOCABULARY

Working holidays

I can identify specific detail in a conversation and talk about trips and excursions.

1	Choose the correct words to complete the
	sentences.

1	I think it's a good idea to	while you're
	still young.	2

- a trip
- b journey
- c travel
- 2 The hotel organises ______ to interesting tourist places.
 - a excursions
- b travels
- c journeys
- 3 I enjoyed the day out, but the ___ back home took four hours!
 - a travel
- b journey
- c excursion
- 4 We're planning a three-day to New York next summer.
 - a travel
- b trip
- c journey
- 5 Would you like to work in the
- industry?

- a trip
- b voyage
- c travel
- 6 We were all tired after the long sea a voyage
 - b travel
- c journey

2 18 Listen to the first part of an interview. Which sentence is NOT true?

- 1 Ellie always goes on working holidays.
- 2 She has visited nine different countries.
- 3 She likes beach holidays.

	A

3	19 Listen to the second part of the						
	interview. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).						
	1		Ellie first found	out (about Woofing		
	2		online. Ellie always goo job ends.	es tro	avelling when her		
	3			king	at summer camps		
	4		You can work a if you aren't spo		tivity camps even		
	5			277	food at activity		
	6		Ellie thinks that be difficult for a		king holidays might people.		
4	th	ings	9 Listen again. below.	Write	e down the		
	1	thre	ee sports that Ell	ie ho	ıs taught,		
	2	thre	ee disadvantage		working holidays		
	3	thre	ee advantages o		rking holidays		
5		atch ouns.	1–6 with a–f to	mak	e compound		
	1	c	a working	а	trip		
	2	П	an organic		desk		
	3	П	a weekend	С	holiday		
	4	П	ski		money		
	5	П	the reception		farm		
	6		pocket	f	season		
6	W	rite t efinit	he correct comp ion. Use the nou	oour ns ir	nd noun for each Exercise 5.		
	1	holiday where you do paid work working holiday					
	2	a sr	mall amount of n	none	ey you receive		
	3	3 a farm that grows food without using chemicals					
	4	the	part of a hotel wen you arrive	here	you check in		
	5		•	Sati	ırday and Sunday		
				3410			

6 the period of time during the winter when

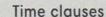
there is enough snow to ski

SPEAKING

Understanding a conversation

I can clarify what I have said and ask for clarification.

1	Match 1-6 with a-f to make sentences. 1 d Can you speak	4 Complete the dialogues with sentences a-c.
	2 Sorry, I didn't 3 I was just	sentences a-c. 1 A: Don't forget to pack your passport.
	 4 I just wanted to 5 Sorry, can you 6 What I said 	B: Sorry, I didn't catch that A: I said, don't forget to pack your passport.
	 a saying that Jo isn't usually late. b was, that sounds a great idea. c ask you about the Maths homework. d more slowly? 	 2 A: Can you hear me better now? B: No, not really. I think it's my phone. I can never get a good signal here. It drives me mad! 3 A: Can you bring your guidebook with you?
•	e catch that. f say that again?	B: Sorry, I didn't get the last part. A: I was just asking if you can bring your
2	Order the sentences to make dialogue A	B: What was that? A: It's OK, I'll bring mine.
	 a What was that? b I was just saying, there's a good film on at the cinema tonight. c I Hey, Matt, there's a good film on the cinema tonight. 	a Forget it.b This is really annoying.
	the cinema tonight. B a	5 © 20 Complete the dialogues with one word
	b Maria can come to the party, bu Sam's busy.	in each gap. Listen and check. A Jo: Hi, Tom. Are you going on the school trip
	 Sorry, I didn't get the last part. C a	in November? Tom: Sorry, I didn't ¹ <u>catch</u> that. The line's bad. You're ² up a bit.
	b Sorry, can you say that again?c Hi, Lily. What time are we meetin	Jo: I just ³ to ask you about the school trip in November.
2	on Friday? Write the phrases below in the correct	Tom: Oh. Yeah, I'm definitely going! B
,	column.	Sam: We need to be at the airport at ten. Jen: 4 was that? Sam: 15 that we need to be at the
	Can you speak louder? What was that? Sorry, I didn't catch that. I said that I was just saying What I asked was Sorry, can you say that again? Sorry, I didn't get the first part.	airport at ten. Jen: OK. C
	I just wanted to ask you about	Cara: Remember to pack your diving shoes because we might go diving if the sea's nice and clear.
	Asking for Clarifying clarification	Mike: Sorry, could you ⁶ louder? I can't hear you.
	Can you speak louder?	Cara: 7 I said was that you should pack your diving shoes. We might go diving.
		Mike: Oh yeah. Good idea!



ENGLISH IN USE

I can use time clauses.

1 Choose the correct option.

- 1 I'll keep an eye on your bag after / (while) you have a swim in the sea.
- 2 I'll call you while / as soon as I get back from my holiday.
- 3 When / After I see Paul, I'll ask him about his trip to China.
- 4 We'll tell someone where we're going until / before we go walking in the mountains.
- 5 Don't worry, we won't leave for the airport until / after you get here.
- 6 We can go away after / while I finish all my exams.
- 7 I'll let you know when / while I find my passport.
- 8 Let's wait after / until the queue is a bit shorter and then go through security.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs below.

	arrive be find leave open take off	
1	We'll wait here until the ticket office open	S.
2	They'll serve food after the plane	
3	I'll email you when we in New Yo	ork.
4	I'll feel homesick as soon as I he	ome!
5	We'll have something to eat when we	

- a nice restaurant.
- 6 I'll look after Rex while you_ away.

3 Find and correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- 1 We'll go as soon as the weather will improve. We'll go as soon as the weather improves.
- 2 The boat won't leave until everyone will be on board.
- 3 As soon as the sun will come out, I'll take some photos.
- 4 When we'll get to the hotel, we'll feel much happier.

4 Add a comma if necessary.

- 1 When we arrive, I'll call you.
- 2 We'll check the weather before we set out.
- 3 While we're waiting we'll have a sandwich.
- 4 We'll stay here until it stops raining.
- 5 I'll send you the link when I get home.

5 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first sentence. Use no more than three words.

1 We'll only eat when everyone gets here. We won't eat until everyone gets here.

2 I'll go to Peru and then to Egypt. I'll go to Egypt

- 3 When it stops raining, we'll leave immediately. We'll leave as soon __ raining.
- 4 I'll check my passport and then pack my clothes.

I'll check my passport ... I pack my clothes.

- 5 He'll only be happy when he gets his money back. He won't be happy ____ money back.
- 6 Read the advert. Choose the correct answers.

A summer job at sea!

We need young people to work on our ships this summer. You'll work as part of our childcare service so that busy parents can relax 1 their children happy.

on board one of our ships, you'll feel what a magical place it is to work! There are so many exciting things to see and do!

work each day, you'll be able to enjoy the amazing facilities on board - swimming pools, a gym, and eight fantastic restaurants.

If you want to have fun this summer 4 money, fill in the application form here.

- 1 a while you'll keep
 - (b) while you keep
- 2 a When you'll come
 - b Until you come
- 3 a After you finish
 - c While you finish
- 4 a when you'll earn
 - c while you earn

- c until you keep
- d before you keep
- c As soon as you come
- d When you came
- b When you'll finish
- d Until you finish
- b before you earn
- d after you'll earn



SELF-ASSESSMENT

For each learning objective, tick (\checkmark) the box that best matches your ability.

⊕ = I understand and can help a friend.

= I understand but have some questions.

= I understand and can do it by myself.

= I do not understand.

		00	\odot	(3)	88	Need help?	Now try
6.1	Vocabulary				***************************************	Students' Book pp. 70–71 Workbook pp. 66–67	Ex. 1-2, p. 75
6.2	Grammar					Students' Book p. 72 Workbook p. 68	Ex. 3, p. 75
6.3	Reading					Students' Book p. 73 Workbook p. 69	,
6.4	Grammar					Students' Book p. 74 Workbook p. 70	Ex. 4, p. 75
6.5	Listening					Students' Book p. 75 Workbook p. 71	
6.6	Speaking					Students' Book p. 76 Workbook p. 72	Ex. 6, p. 75
6.7	English in Use					Students' Book p. 77 Workbook p. 73	Ex. 5, p. 75

- 6.1 I can talk about holidays and travelling.
- 6.2 I can talk about obligation, prohibition and advice.
- 6.3 I can find specific detail in an article and talk about travelling.
- 6.4 I can speculate about the present.
- 6.5 I can identify specific detail in a conversation and talk about trips and excursions.
- 6.6 I can clarify what I have said and ask for clarification.
- 6.7 I can use time clauses.

What can you remember from this unit?

	New words I learned (the words you most want to remember from this unit)	Expressions and phrases I liked (any expressions or phrases you think sound nice, useful or funny)	english I heard or read outside class (e.g. from websites, books, adverts, films, music)
		F-/- ***	09.4
ter I Degregation at the regular part of the control of the contro			
		the second second	1277



SELF-CHECK

Vocabulary

1	Complete the sentences with
	the words below. There are
	two extra words.

backpacking break camp cruise platform return ticket trip

- 1 What does the train leave from?
- 2 I'd like a train ___ London, please.
- 3 We're planning a camping _ this summer.
- 4 We went on a three-week and really loved being on the ship.
- 5 She's just been on a city to Paris for the weekend.
- 6 You can do lots of different sports at the activity

2 Choose the correct option.

- 1 You can make a reservation / reception online.
- 2 Wow! There's a beautiful pool / view from this window!
- 3 There are two of us, so we need a single / double room, please.
- 4 I wear sunglasses / sun cream to protect my eyes from the bright sun.
- 5 A tent / torch will help you see in the dark.
- 6 You can find details about the museum in the guidebook / trunks.
- 7 It's a three-day journey / travel to reach this village in the mountains.
- 8 I'd love to trip / travel around India.

Grammar

3	Match sentences 1–6 with conclusions a–i. There	e are three
	extra conclusions.	

1	I'm not su	ire whose	coat t	this is.
•	 11111100 30	ii C Wiilosc	cour	.1113 13.

- 2 It's only eight o'clock, but Tania's gone to bed!
 - I don't know when Max gets back from holiday.
- You've just had a very big lunch.
- I don't know where my passport is.
- No one's in the sea today.
- a It can't be very cold.
- b It could be tomorrow.
- c You can't be hungry!
- d It must be next week.
- f It might be John's.
- a She can't be ill.
- h It must be too cold.
- i She must be tired.

4 Choose the correct answers.

e It may be in my bedroom.

1	I'm going to go to bed	lhome
	a as soon as Laet	b while Last

- 2 I'll ask Maria about her holiday ...
 - a until I see b when I see
- 3 We need to get everything tidy _ _home!
 - a before Mum gets b before Mum will get
- 4 I'll finish packing a taxi. a while you'll call b while you call
- 5 The cafe's closed, but we'll wait here
 - a when it will open b until it opens
- 6 I'll call you. my homework. a after I finish b when I'll finish

Speaking language practice

5 Complete the dialogues with the phrases below.

didn't catch first part I said that just saying say that again what I asked

- 1 A: Have you printed your plane ticket?
 - B: Sorry, I _____ that.
 - was if you've printed your plane ticket.
- 2 A: Sara's picking us up at eight and Tom's meeting us at the airport.
 - B: Sorry, I didn't get the _
 - A: _____ Sara's picking us up at eight.
- 3 A: There's a special offer on cruises at the moment.
 - B: Sorry, can you ____ ?
 - A: Yes, I was _ there's a special offer on cruises at the moment. Are you interested?

1 Match the words below with the photos.

adventure holiday sightseeing sunbathing voluntourism





1 sunbathing





-

4

2

2 Match word friends 1-6 with definitions a-f.

- 1 d budget airlines
- 2 preferred option
- 3 key factor
- 4 ex-pat communities
- 5 friendly reputation
- 6 great attraction
- a an important element
- b a group of foreign residents
- c a general opinion that people are nice
- d low-cost travel by plane
- e a place lots of people visit
- f the choice you like the best

3 Complete the advert with the words below.

activity camping landscapes preferred option sightseeing sunbathing trekking

Sign up today for an 7 holiday
real bed for the night.
6is to stay in shelters with a
We don't offer 5 – our guests'
4 and feel at one with nature!
with us in the Pyrenees! You'll see beautiful
² on the beach? Come ³
Tired of the usual holidays of ¹ sightseeing and

Sign up today for an ⁷_____ holiday you'll never forget!

4 Choose the correct option according to the video.

- 1 The sea location / temperature in the Maldives is wonderful.
- 2 You can do lots of sports there, like scuba / ski diving.
- 3 The ride to the glacier in Iceland can be long and rough / snowy.
- 4 The fast / top speed in a snowmobile is ninety-five kilometres per hour.
- 5 The lovely thing about the hot-air balloon experience is the total silence / perspective.

5 Complete the sentences about the video with the modal verbs below.

can't could don't have to have to might must shouldn't

- You <u>have to</u> take plenty of money on these holidays.
- 2 You _____ travel alone when snowmobiling it's not a very good idea.
- 3 You _____ do the hot-air ballooning more cheaply with other people.
- 4 You _____ annoy people doing jet skiing, so don't do it for long!
- 5 It ______ be that difficult to do snowmobiling I bet it's really easy.
- 6 It ______ be beautiful to be up in a balloon looking at those views.
- 7 You _____ go to Iceland to do snowmobiling - there are lots of cold places!

6 Complete the blog post with the correct form of the verbs below.

blow break fall melt shine

Today was the first time I tried snowmobiling in Iceland. I really loved it!

The weather was weird. The wind

1 was blowing really hard, but it didn't matter too much because the sun

2 all day. In fact, it is quite warm for February, so the ice



a lot. But I was careful driving over the glacier.

It was beautiful at the beginning of day. The dawn

at about seven o'clock. As the days are so short here in the winter, I could see the night 5 as well.

A really memorable day!

7 Read the video script. Underline any words or phrases you don't know and translate them into your language.

10

20

25

	Adventures of a lifetime		
	Part 1		
	These are the Maldives, a beautiful series of islands located in the Indian Ocean, where	*************************************	v
	the sun is always shining. It's popular with travellers looking for a luxury option. In fact,		
	most tourists here have their own private island for total relaxation! But further out to sea,	P1-7-17-17-18-18-18-18-18-18-18-18-18-18-18-18-18-	
5	there are more energetic options.	<u> </u>	
	Meet our hosts, Kirstie and Phil. Here in the Indian Ocean the sea temperature is a		
	wonderful twenty-seven degrees Celsius – just perfect for swimming, snorkeling, scuba	***************************************	**********
	diving, fishing, windsurfing and the sport we're going to see now: jet skiing! Kirstie is		
	nervous at first, but she soon gets the idea.		
10	This is the most popular and comfortable model because you can sit down in it. You can		
	go up to 80 kilometres per hour, so it's better to hold on tight! Jet skiing is great fun, but	, <u></u>	
	expensive. Other tourists might also get annoyed by the noise, so it's best to do it for short		
	lengths of time.		
	Part 2		
15	Kirstie and Phil are now off to a much colder place. In fact, the temperature has dropped		
	to minus twenty degrees Celsius. They have come to iceland to try their next adventure	· 	
	sport: snowmobiling!		
	Here glaciers cover eleven percent of the country, but they are not easy to get to. Kirstie	***********************************	-41-48-18-48-
	and Phil have to travel in a specially prepared 4x4 vehicle. It's a long and a bit of a rough		
20	ride! The landscape looks like the surface of the moon. In fact, astronauts came here to	-	
	practise for their expeditions.	P-10-10-01-01-01-01-01-01-01-01-01-01-01-	
	Obviously, to ride one of these vehicles, you need to wear special protective clothing. The		
	good news is that the accelerator and handle bars are heated! The snowmobile's top		
	speed is ninety-five kilometres per hour, but the terrain here is tough, so Kirstie and Phil are		
25	taking it easy.		
	With snowmobiling, you should always follow your guide's advice. It's best to do it when		
	snow has just fallen. If not, you might fall through the snow when the ice melts. It can be	***************************************	**********
	very dangerous. Again, it's not a cheap option, but the landscapes are unique, especially	*************************************	*********
	as night falls over the glacier.	18148-ul-281-ul-281-ul-281-181-181-181-181-181-181-181-181-1	
30	Part 3		
	Kirstie and Phil's final adventure haliday is a much more relaxing option: hot-air		
	ballooning! They are now in Morocco, between the city of Marrakech and the Atlas		
	Mountains. There's only one drawback: to do this sport, you have to get up really early.	P-18-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-	
	Balloons fly in the early morning before the wind starts to blow. It's six o'clock in the		
35	morning now. The sun is rising over the Atlas, the sky is blue, but the stars are still out. It's a		
	beautiful moment as the dawn breaks.		
	Compared to the other sports we've seen, the wonderful thing about flying in a hot-air		
	balloon is the slowness and the total silence. You feel like you're floating and the views are		
	stunning. You see everything from such a different perspective. Yes, it's the perfect place		
40	to get away from it all, but It's also the most expensive of all the trips. If you want to do it		

more cheaply, you can share a balloon with other travellers. Enjoy the ride!



Getting to know you

VOCABULARY

Family and friends | Phrasal verbs

GRAMMAR

Second Conditional | Defining and non-defining relative clauses

READING

True / False

LISTENING

Identifying specific details | Multiple choice

SPEAKING

Identifying people

WRITING

A short story

BBC CULTURE

Is moving house good for you?

VOCABULARY

Family and friends

I can talk about relationships with family and friends.

1 Choose the correct answers.

- 1 Who shares one parent with you, but not two parents?
 a your stepson
 b your half-brother
- 2 Who is your mother's mother?
 - a your great-grandmother b your grandmother
- 3 If your mother marries again, who is the man?
 - a your grandfather
- b your stepfather
- 4 Who is your father's grandfather?
 - a your great-grandfather b your great-great-grandfather
- 5 If your father marries again and his new wife already has two daughters, who are they?
 - a your half-sisters
- b your stepsisters

2 • Read the comments and write the family words.

- 1 Tom's the same age as me and I really like him. His mum's married to my dad now, but I'm only related to him by marriage, not by blood. He's my <u>stepbrother</u>.
- 2 Elsie is my dad's mother, so she's my _____. She's nearly seventy, but she still does a lot of sport!
- 3 Lucy's the youngest in my family and she's my _____. We have the same mum, but we have different dads.
- 4 My mum died when I was quite young. My dad's got a new wife now, called Sara. I really like her, and I call her Mum, even though she isn't my real mother. She's my _____.
- 5 The oldest person in my family is Albert. He's eighty-nine and he's my mum's grandfather, so he's my ______.

3 Choose the correct option.

- 1 I go / get) on really well with my cousin Jack he's great!
- 2 You should talk to someone if you have a problem don't just deal for / with it on your own.
- 3 I really enjoy hanging / holding out with my friends.
- 4 If you're feeling lonely, you should go *out / over* and meet some new people.
- 5 | got / fell out with Tania last week, but we soon sorted things out and we're friends again now.
- 6 I share a bedroom with my sister, but I can't put / get up with all her mess. I want my own room!

4	Complete the sentences with the deal with fall out with get on with go	correct form of the phrasal verbs below.
	dedi with fail out with get on with go	out hang out with put up with
1		re're completely different and she just annoys me! as such as bullying on your own. It's much easier if you ask
3		a lot because I wanted to make new friends.
4		
5	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	
6	I Dale because he kept ask	king me to do his homework for him and it really annoyed me!
5 (WORD FRIENDS Look at the pictures	. Choose the correct sentences
100		
1	a She likes spending time on 2	a They don't share any 3 a They're having an
	her own.	interests. argument.
		b They have the same sense b They're getting to know
	after school.	of humour. each other.
6	Complete the sentences with	7 Complete the text with one word in each gap.
tł	ne words below. There are two	2 2 2 2 3 mpiete the text with one word in each gap.
е	xtra words.	
T	backgrounds get enjoy	Vous muchlome Francis have to be but
1	have nerves own see	Your problems – Emma's here to help!
ı	sense share spend	My mum and dad got divorced two years ago and my dad has just remarried.
1	I'm quite a shy person – it takes	I really don't ¹ get on with his wife, my new ² . She's also got two
•	me a while to <u>get</u> to know people.	daughters already, so I've now got two ³ . I know I should be happy for
2	I love being with other people	my dad, but this woman really gets ⁴ my nerves and I don't ⁵
	and I hate spending time on my	any interests with her kids! I just stay in my bedroom all the time now because I don't know how to 6 with this situation. Help!
-	•	
3	Flossie and I get on well and we	Emma says: It can be difficult when a parent remarries, especially when there are also new children to add to your family. It will take time for you to 7 to
	each other's company.	know your dad's new wife, so just be patient. But hopefully, if you make the effort
4	Jo and Beth come from similar , so they have a lot in common.	and 8 some time with her daughters, you will find that things improve.
5	It really gets on my	Here your and 2 assuments
	when my sister borrows my	Have your say! 2 comments
	clothes without asking!	Amelia24 This happened to me two years ago when my mum remarried.
6	My friends and I usually	1 9 a lot of arguments with my new dad and I even ended up shouting
_	each other at the weekend.	at my mum and ¹⁰ out with her, which was awful. You have to give the
7	I think it's important for friends	new relationships time.
	to have the same of humour.	SaraG Don't spend too much time at home if you find it stressful. 11 out
8	A CONTRACTOR OF THE PROPERTY O	when you can and hang ¹² with your friends at weekends, rather than
,	of time together, especially in	spending time ¹³ your own at home. The others are right – it takes time,
	the school holidays.	but I'm sure that if you make the effort with your new family members, in time you will all enjoy 14

will all enjoy ¹⁴_____ other's company.

GRAMMAR

Second conditional

I can talk about imaginary situations.

1		Match 1–6 with a–f to make sentences.	4 Omplete the text messages w
	1	d Sam would do better in exams	the correct form of the verbs below.
	2	If I didn't have any friends,	the Second Conditional.
	3	You wouldn't be so tired	be (x2) buy have know like
	4	If you had the chance to go travelling,	not remember not worry
	5	Would you be pleased	not remember mot worry
	6	If I were you,	Apparent of the Control of the Contr
			Hi, Jenna! Help! I need some advice. It's
	a	I'd be really lonely.	birthday next Saturday and I don't know
	b	if your friends organised a party for you?	what to give her. If I had plenty of mon
	C	I'd talk to someone about your problems.	1 ² her something nice to wear
	d	if he worked harder.	because I know she ³ that. Bu
	е	if you went to bed earlier.	only got a few pounds. What can I do?
	f	which countries would you visit?	
2	•	Choose the correct option.	If I ⁴ you, I ⁵ about b
	1	I will be / would be really happy if my dad would	expensive gifts. That's not what friends
		get / (got) married again.	about. Sure, Abi ⁶ upset if you
	2	What would / will you do if your best friend was /	⁷ her birthday, but I'm sure sh
	_	would be upset with you?	feel bad if she 8 you were so
	3	If I had / would have plenty of money, I will take /	worried. Just relax! Buy her some flower
	3	would take all my friends out for a meal.	and give her a big birthday hug!
	4	Lottie will be / would be more popular if she wasn't /	and give her a big biranday hag.
	4		A 3
	_	wouldn't be so moody!	5 000 Complete the article with or
	5	If I were / would be you, I don't worry / wouldn't	word in each gap.
		worry about what other people think of you.	word in each gap.
	6	If Max wouldn't talk / didn't talk so much in class, his	
		teachers don't get / wouldn't get so angry with him.	11-12
2	-	• Canadata the accord and the three it was an	Money or friends?
3		Complete the second sentence so that it means	What ¹ would you do if you won £10
		e same as the first sentence. Use the Second onditional.	million? 2 you had that amour
			of money, you ³ need to work
	1	I have a lot of exams this year, so I'm really stressed.	ever! Just imagine that! If you
		I wouldn't be so stressed if I didn't have a lot of	4 have to work, you 5
		exams this year.	be able to spend your life travelling
	2	Carrie is unfit because she doesn't do any exercise.	or relaxing – doing exactly what you
		If Carrie some exercise, she	
		fitter.	wanted. Does that sound good to you?
	3	Jack's parents always get worried because he	Most people imagine that if they
		never tells them where he's going.	6rich, they would ⁷
		Jack's parents worried if he	happier. They think that if money
		them where he was going.	8 not a problem for them, they
	4	I'm not old enough to watch that film.	9 have any worries in the wor
	7	I that film if I older.	But in reality, it seems this isn't true.
	_		
	5	I don't have a big house, so I won't invite many	Psychologists have found that what real
		people to the party.	makes us happy is our family and friend
		I more people to the party if I	and money can't buy those. So, if you
	194	a bigger house.	choose between money an
	6	You shouldn't spend all your money on clothes.	friends, which 11 you go for?
		If I you I all your money on clothes.	

4	Complete the text messages with the correct form of the verbs below. Use the Second Conditional.
	be (x2) buy have know like not remember not worry
AND DESCRIPTION OF THE PERSON	Hi, Jenna! Help! I need some advice. It's Abi's birthday next Saturday and I don't know what to give her. If I ¹ had plenty of money, I ² her something nice to wear because I know she ³ that. But I've only got a few pounds. What can I do?
	If I ⁴ you, I ⁵ about buying expensive gifts. That's not what friendship is about. Sure, Abi ⁶ upset if you ⁷ her birthday, but I'm sure she'd feel bad if she ⁸ you were so worried. Just relax! Buy her some flowers and give her a big birthday hug!
	Complete the article with one word in each gap.
	word in each gap.
	Money or friends? What 1 would you do if you won £10 million? 2 you had that amount of money, you 3 need to work – ever! Just imagine that! If you 4 have to work, you 5 be able to spend your life travelling or relaxing – doing exactly what you wanted. Does that sound good to you? Most people imagine that if they 6 rich, they would 7
	Money or friends? What 1 would you do if you won £10 million? 2 you had that amount of money, you 3 need to work – ever! Just imagine that! If you 4 have to work, you 5 be able to spend your life travelling or relaxing – doing exactly what you wanted. Does that sound good to you? Most people imagine that if they 6 rich, they would 7 happier. They think that if money 8 not a problem for them, they
	What ¹ would you do if you won £10 million? ² you had that amount of money, you ³ need to work – ever! Just imagine that! If you ⁴ have to work, you ⁵ be able to spend your life travelling or relaxing – doing exactly what you wanted. Does that sound good to you? Most people imagine that if they ⁶ rich, they would ⁷ happier. They think that if money ⁸ not a problem for them, they ⁹ have any worries in the world. But in reality, it seems this isn't true.
	Money or friends? What 1 would you do if you won £10 million? 2 you had that amount of money, you 3 need to work – ever! Just imagine that! If you 4 have to work, you 5 be able to spend your life travelling or relaxing – doing exactly what you wanted. Does that sound good to you? Most people imagine that if they 6 rich, they would 7 happier. They think that if money 8 not a problem for them, they 9 have any worries in the world. But in reality, it seems this isn't true. Psychologists have found that what really
	What ¹ would you do if you won £10 million? ² you had that amount of money, you ³ need to work – ever! Just imagine that! If you ⁴ have to work, you ⁵ be able to spend your life travelling or relaxing – doing exactly what you wanted. Does that sound good to you? Most people imagine that if they ⁶ rich, they would ⁷ happier. They think that if money ⁸ not a problem for them, they ⁹ have any worries in the world. But in reality, it seems this isn't true.

READING and VOCABULARY

Friendship

I can find specific detail in an article and talk about friends.

1	Complete the words in the sentences. 1 Your mates are your friends. 2 Your c s are the friends	3 Find word friends with <i>friend</i> and <i>friendship</i> in the text. Then complete the sentences with the words below.
	you have in your class at school. 3 Your bt friends are the ones you like	circle close form make
	the most. 4 Someone who doesn't like you and tries to	Some people don't find it easy to <u>make</u> new friends.
	hurt you is your ey. 5 Jodie h a lot of friends.	2 Everyone needs friends that they can talk to when they have problems.
	6 Marie wants to b_ friends with me.	3 Sam's a very popular guy – he has a big of friends!
2	Read the article. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).	4 It can take time to a real friendship with someone.
	1 You pay a rent-a-friend website to choose a friend for you.	4 Find phrases 1–4 in the text. Then match them with
	2 The first rent-a-friend websites were	definitions a-d.
	in the United States.	1 c get in touch with a do exercise in a gym
	3 People in Japan are often too busy	2 work out b find by chance
	to spend time with friends.	3 catch on c contact
	4 Lia hasn't made many new friends in London.	4 come across d become popular



Would you rent a friend?

to have genuine friends.

Lia thinks you could make real friends by using a rent-a-friend website. Tom thinks it takes time to make real friends, but it is worth waiting in order

We all know it can be difficult to make new friends when you move to a new place, but would you ever consider paying someone to be your friend? This is the service that a rent-a-friend website offers. The idea is simple: you look through the online profiles and select someone you think you would get on with, then you get in touch with them. For a small fee, the person will meet you and spend time with you, doing whatever you want to do - working out at the gym, watching a movie or just playing computer games.

The biggest rent-a-friend websites are in the USA, where the idea has really caught on, especially in big cities such as New York. But the idea originated in Japan, where many people's lives

are so full of working or studying that they have little time for socialising and forming genuine friendships. There are also now websites available in the UK and several other countries.

We asked our readers what they thought and some of you were in favour of the idea. Lia, from North London, thought it could be a good way to meet new people. She moved to London when she was sixteen and had to leave all her close friends behind in Manchester. 'It was quite hard at first,' she says, 'and I was a bit lonely for a while.' She now has a big circle of friends, but she says that if she moved again, she would consider the idea of renting a friend. 'Sometimes when you're new to a place, you just want to

get out and do something, but it isn't much fun going to the cinema on your own. I think it would be fun to meet someone in this way - you might even come across your new best friend!'

Tom, who lives in Scotland, doesn't agree. He believes that friends are a really important part of our life and we shouldn't devalue the idea of friendship by making it into something that you can buy and sell instantly. 'If I moved to a new city,' he says, 'I'd put the effort into getting to know my new classmates and form friendships with them. It might take a bit longer, but it's better than buying fake friends.'

Have your say! Comment below.

GRAMMAR

Defining and non-defining relative clauses

I can be specific about people, things and places.

1		Complete	the	sentences	with	clauses	a-f.
	-						

- 1 The house e has got a big garden.
- 2 The men _____ both had dark hair.
- 3 The car _____ is quite old.
- 4 There's a small café on the beach, _____
- 5 My new bike, _____, is amazing!
- 6 Mrs Perks, _____, is a dance teacher.
- a where they sell really nice ice creams
- b which my mum drives
- c who lives in my street
- d that I saw near the bank
- e that my parents want to buy
- f which I ride every day

2 Read the article. Choose the correct answers.

Real friends?

online as y	our friend		a lot of the people		
			uch as Facebook		
		CONTRACTOR OF STREET	red to around fifty		
'real' frien	ds, ³	they actua	ally meet in real life.		
Facebook,	4	was started i	in 2004, now has		
over 1.5 bi	llion user:	s worldwide, and	a lot of people see it		
as a place	5	they can mee	et new friends as well		
as keeping	in touch	with old ones. S	tudies ⁶		
have looke	d at how	people behave of	n social media sites		
have found	that ped	ple are sometim	es more honest and		
open onlin	e than th	ey are in real life	. But psychologists		
say, it is ou	ur ten or t	welve closest re	ationships		
7	_ are the	most important	to us. So maybe it's		
still better	to meet y	our friends in th	e local park or café,		
8	you can talk face to face				

1	a which	b who	c where	d what
2	a that	b where	c what	d which
3	a which	b that	c who	d where
4	a what	b which	c who	d that
5	a which	b that	c who	d where
6	a that	b who	c where	d what
7	a who	b where	c which	d what
8	a which	b who	c that	d where

- **3** •• Combine the sentences using relative clauses. Use *who*, *which* or *where*. Add commas where necessary.
 - My cousin is very good at football. He's three years older than me.
 My cousin, who is three years older than me, is very good at football.
 - 2 Edinburgh is about 600 kilometres from London. It's the capital of Scotland. Edinburgh _______about 600 kilometres from London.
 - 3 Jo showed me the house. She lived there when she was younger.
 Jo showed me _______ when she was younger.
 - 4 We met a man. He grows vegetables for the market.

We met a man ... for the market.

- 5 Bournemouth is on the coast. My grandparents live there.
 Bournemouth on the coast.
- 6 The film was very good. We saw it last week.
 The film _____
 very good.
- 4 Find and correct the mistakes in the sentences. Remember to check for commas. Two sentences are correct.
 - 1 That's the café which we sometimes have lunch.

That's the café where we sometimes have lunch.

- 2 The prize that we won wasn't very exciting.
- 3 Sophie who is French can speak French and English.
- 4 We don't know all the people that live in our street.
- 5 Their car, that is over ten years old, still works well.
- 6 I lent the book to Dan, which loves adventure stories.

LISTENING and VOCABULARY

A friend in need ...

I can identify specific information in a monologue and understand different meanings of get.

- 1 WORD FRIENDS What does get mean in each sentence? Choose the correct option.
 - 1 We didn't get home until after midnight! become /(arrive)/ leave
 - 2 I get bored quite quickly if I have nothing to do.

make / bring / become

- 3 I got an email from my uncle yesterday. received / arrived / wrote
- 4 need to get some new jeans. make / change / buy
- 5 My brother is trying to get a job. pay / find / leave
- 6 Shall I get you a drink? take / drink / bring
- 2 Listen to a teacher talking about a buddy system for students with autism in her school. Choose the correct answers.
 - 1 What does the teacher say about autism?
 - a It's a disability.
 - b It isn't very common.
 - It can cause social problems for some students.
 - 2 When are buddies most needed?
 - a during lessons
 - b at break time
 - c before and after school
 - 3 What is the best description of a buddy?
 - a a helper
 - b a best friend
 - c a teacher
 - 4 What has surprised the teachers?
 - a The buddies have learned a lot from the experience.
 - b There are now fewer students with autism.
 - Students with autism now have fewer problems in class.

- 3 ② 22 Listen to Joey talking about being a buddy. Choose the correct answers.
 - 1 What do we learn about Joey and Matt?
 - a They were friends before the buddy scheme started.
 - b They are in the same class.
 - c They share the same friends.
 - 2 What did Matt find difficult at break times?
 - a chatting to people
 - b spending time alone
 - c joining in with activities
 - 3 What did Joey help Matt to do?
 - a become better at sport
 - b have the confidence to make friends
 - c cope with people who are strange
 - 4 What has Joey learned from the experience?
 - a Everyone can play football.
 - b It isn't easy to make friends.
 - c It's OK to be different.
- 4 ② 23 Complete the sentences with the phrases below. Listen and check.

get into get involved gets quite stressed got a lot out of get back

- first started being a buddy to Matt when I got back to school after the summer holidays.
- 2 He explained that ______ if he's surrounded by people the whole time.
- 3 If there's a big activity going on, he finds it difficult to
- 4 If he gets a bit better, think he'll the school team!
- 5 I've _____ the whole experience of being a buddy.



SPEAKING

Identifying people

I can explain who I am talking about.

1		omplete the words in the definitions of eople at a wedding.
	1	The b <u>r i d</u> e is the woman who is getting married.
	2	The bgm is the man who is getting married.
	3	A b m d is a good friend who helps the woman who is getting married.
	4	A pb_y is a young boy who helps the woman who is getting married.
	5	The gs are the people who come to watch the wedding.
2	M	atch 1–6 with a–f to make questions.
	1	f Who's the boy on
	2	Who's the girl who is
	3	Who's that guy next
	4	☐ Which one
	5	Who's the woman at
	6	Who's the young child in
	а	wearing a blue dress?
	b	do you mean?
	С	the front, by the door?
	d	the middle?
	е	to your grandmother?
	f	the left?
3		omplete the sentences with the words elow.
		back near one playing standing talking tall wearing
	1	That's Paul, there. He's <i>talking</i> to my Uncle George.
	2	Look, there's my Aunt Paula. She's at the, behind my cousin Freddie.
	3	She's a really nice dress.
	4	Toby's on the left, the bridegroom.
	5	There's my cousin Dave. He's next to my brother Matty, looking a bit bored!
	6	That's my little cousin Tilly. She'swith a ball. Look, she's really cute!
	7	Mike's the who is wearing a red tie.
	8	Abigail's the one, in the pink dress.

Boo! It'll be What are you 1 A: Hi, Jen. B: I'm just photos 2 A:	lete the dialogues with rases below.	
I		It'll be a laugh. Pass it here. Lare you up to?
1	A:	Hi, Jen. What are you up to?
	В:	I'm just showing Tara my holiday photos. Do you want to see them?
2	A:	
	В:	Oh Brett! You scared me! How are you?
3	A:	What's that?
	B:	It's my brother's graduation photo.
	A:	Oh, let's see it.
	B:	OK. There you are.
4	A:	Do you want to see the photos from my end-of-year party?
	В:	Yeah, why not? It's always funny looking at other people's

photos.

5 24 Complete the dialogue with the words below. There are two extra words. Listen and check. at bride cute let's on pageboy sitting up wearing which Liz: Hi, there. What are you two ¹up to? I'm just showing Mark the photos from my Kim: family party last month. Remember? It was my granddad's seventieth birthday. Look, that's me and my cousin Beth. Liz: see. Oh yeah. She looks nice. She is. We get on really well. Kim: Mark: Who's that little boy? Kim: 3____one? Mark: The one 4_ _ the left, behind you. The one who's 5____ _ a blue jumper. Oh that's my half-brother. He was a Kim: at my sister's wedding last year. Aw! He's 7_____! And who's that guy Liz: who's 8_ _ next to your brother? That's my cousin Jack. He lives in Kim: Manchester. Liz: Hmm, he's quite good-looking!

Can I meet him some time?



A short story about friendship

I can write a short story.

1 Read the story. Choose the correct answers.

- 1 What does Emma tell us to set the scene?
 - a She wants to make some new friends.
 - b She wants to celebrate the end of exams.
- 2 What is the first event in the story?
 - a Emma talks to Cara.
 - b Emma invites Alfie and George.
- 3 What is the second event in the story?
 - a Emma decides that the new girl is boring.
 - b Emma decides to invite the new girl.
- 4 What is the climax of the story?
 - a Bethanie gets on well with everyone.
 - b Cara is bored at the party.



Making a new friend

Last weekend I wanted to celebrate the end of exams. I decided to invite a few friends round to my house to watch a movie and have some pizza. First, I asked Cara. She's my best friend. 'Cool! Great idea,' she said, so I was really pleased.

Next, we planned who else to invite. 'You should invite Alfie and George,' Cara said. 'They're always good fun.' I agreed and I added them to my list.

Just then, I noticed the new girl in our class. She was very quiet and she didn't really speak to anyone. To be honest, I thought she was a bit boring. 'I think I'll invite the new girl,' I said. I went over to her and asked her. 'I'd love to,' she said.

That weekend we had a great time. Everyone got on well with each other and the new girl, Bethanie, wasn't boring at all. In fact, she made us all laugh a lot and we're now good friends! In future I won't be so quick to judge people before I get to know them.

2 Write the underlined phrases and sentences from in the story in the correct group.

Starting your story and setting the scene	Last week it was my birthday. Last weekend I wanted to celebrate the end of exams.
Introducing your characters	Cara's in the same class as me.
Using time words and phrases to show the order of events	First,
Using direct speech	'You should invite Alfie and George,' Cara said.
Ending your story	I learned an important lesson that day.

- 3 Complete the sentences with the time words below.
 - afterwards just last that
 - 1 Last week it was my birthday.
 - then, I noticed a girl who was standing on her own.
 - 3 ____ day I made a new friend.
 - , she invited me round to her house.
- 4 Rewrite the direct speech with the correct punctuation.
 - 1 I'm having a party next weekend I said 'I'm having a party next weekend,' I said.
 - 2 Would you like to come to my party I asked
 - 3 I'd love to come to the party he said but I can't
 - 4 I think that's a great idea she said
- 5 Write a story about organising an event and making a new friend. Follow the instructions below.
 - 1 Use the story in Exercise 1 as a model.
 - 2 Follow these steps and say:
 - · what event you wanted to organise.
 - · what you did or who you spoke to first.
 - · what you talked about and planned next.
 - · who else you decided to invite and why.
 - · what happened at the event.
 - · what you learnt from the experience.



SELF-ASSESSMENT

For each learning objective, tick (\checkmark) the box that best matches your ability.

- : = I understand and can help a friend.
- = I understand but have some questions.
- c = I understand and can do it by myself.
- 🙁 😑 I do not understand.

		000	\odot	8	88	Need help?	Now try
7.1	Vocabulary					Students' Book pp. 82–83 Workbook pp. 78–79	Ex. 1–2, p. 87
7.2	Grammar					Students' Book p. 84 Workbook p. 80	Ex. 3, p. 87
7.3	Reading					Students' Book p. 85 Workbook p. 81	
7.4	Grammar					Students' Book p. 86 Workbook p. 82	Ex. 4-5, p. 87
7.5	Listening					Students' Book p. 87 Workbook p. 83	
7.6	Speaking					Students' Book p. 88 Workbook p. 84	Ex. 6, p. 87
7.7	Writing					Students' Book p. 89 Workbook p. 85	

- 7.1 I can talk about relationships with family and friends.
- 7.2 I can talk about imaginary situations.
- 7.3 I can find specific detail in an article and talk about friends.
- 7.4 I can be specific about people, things and places.
- 7.5 I can identify specific information in a monologue and understand different meanings of get.
- 7.6 I can explain who I am talking about.
- 7.7 I can write a short story.

What can you remember from this unit?

New words I learned (the words you most want to remember from this unit)	Expressions and phrases I liked (any expressions or phrases you think sound nice, useful or funny)	English I heard or read outside class (e.g. from websites, books, adverts, films, music)

7.9

SELF-CHECK

Vocabulary 1 Match words 1-6 with definitions a-f. 1 grandfather 4 stepbrother 2 great-grandmother 5 stepmother 3 half-sister 6 stepson a a woman who is married to your father, who is not your real mother b the father of your mother or father c a girl who shares one parent with you, but not both parents

d a boy who is the child of the woman a

man is married to, but not his child

e the son of your stepfather or stepmother,

who is related to you by marriage, not

f the mother of your grandmother

2 Choose the correct option.

by blood

- 1 Who do you usually hold / hang out with after school?
- 2 Don't get angry I don't want to fall out / off with you!
- 3 His teachers said they wouldn't *put / keep* up with his bad behaviour any longer.
- 4 Dan and I have the same feeling / sense of humour.
- 5 We are always doing / having arguments.
- 6 Sara and I have a lot in / for common.
- 7 Peggy went / got a bit upset when I told her about the accident.
- 8 Kitty has / keeps loads of friends!

Grammar

3	Complete the Second Conditional					
	sentences with the correct form of the verbs					
	in brackets.					

		-			
1	If you	m better e	ore time exam resu		-
2		to th sunny. (ne beach		
3		lots of a			_ all
4		to som			:)
5		mo near a			
6		drawingy, s	•	Art at	

4 Choose the correct option.

- 1 The boy who / which / where sits next to me in class is called Max.
- 2 That's the park that / which / where we sometimes hang out after school.
- 3 There's a new boy in my class, which / that / who comes from Spain.
- 4 Their house, that / who / which is in the town centre, is quite big.
- 5 Is that the bike who / that / where you got for your birthday?
- 6 There's a boating lake in the park, which / where / that you can hire boats.

5 Rewrite the sentences adding the information in brackets as a non-defining relative clause. Add commas where necessary.

CC	ommas where necessary	/.
1	My grandmother is still My	very active. (is seventy-six
2	My uncle works at the r (is a doctor)	nain hospital in the city.
	My	in the city.
3	Bournemouth is on the (my cousins live)	south coast.
	Bournemouthsouth coast.	
4	His new bike is really lig birthday)	ht. (he got for his
	His new	light.
5	Andy suggested going town. (they do really nic	to the pizza restaurant in ce pizzas)

Speaking language practice

Andy_

6 Complete the dialogues with the phrases below.

	ugh at the back do you mean s wearing tall one up to who's that boy	
Α		
A: H	Lizzy. What are you ¹ ?	
	just showing Katie the photos from my siste dding. Do you want to see them?	r's
A: St	re. It'll be ²	
В		
A: 3_	on the left?	
B: W	nich one ⁴ ?	
A: Th	e ⁵ with dark hair, on the right.	
С	•	
A: Th	at's my Auntie Lucy there, 6	
B: O	yes. ⁷ a really nice dress!	

really nice pizzas.

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of

5 We enjoyed the video about the Dolgans who / which the teacher showed in class.

the verbs in brackets.

1 Match 1–6 with a–f to make word friends.

1	d community a problem	the verbs in brackets.
2	sense of b family	1 If the Dolgan people didn't move house
3	image c people	regularly, the reindeer would die (die).
4	retired d spirit	2 What would you do if you (live) in
5	big happy e identity	the Arctic?
6	rootless f couples	3 I (not feel) bad if I lived in the Arctic. I like the cold!
	omplete the sentences with the word iends in Exercise 1.	 If I could choose, I (live) nearer my family.
1	There are many <i>rootless people</i> in the world today. They are always moving from one place to another.	5 I would move to another country if I (have) more money.
2		5 Complete the sentences with the adjectives below.
	in beach areas. It can be a very relaxing way to live when you have stopped working.	essential extended nomadic perfect raw typical valuable
3		1 We are far above the Arctic Circle and this is
	, but they are not as bad	a typical Dolgan village.
	as they seem.	2 Good relationships are here, so
4	He helped a lot of people in society and	they all get on well. 3 Reindeer are so that people only eat
-	demonstrated a great	them if they have to.
5	Being part of a club can give people a	4 Their favourite food is fish from the
6	Everybody was very friendly – they were	frozen rivers.
·	like a for me.	5 This Dolgan village is home to just two
		families.
3 C	thoose the correct option.	6 Over a year, these people travel
1	, ,	hundreds of miles across the vast frozen tundra.
	goes out with each other. They are all friends.	7 Here, man and reindeer live in harmony.
2	If you have to <i>put up with / deal with</i> a serious problem, sometimes it's good to ask for help.	6 Choose the correct option. Which relative pronouns can be replaced with that?
3	If you don't know what to do tonight, you can fall out with / hang out with us.	1 Survival is only possible because of reindeer fur, which) who makes very warm clothing.
4	You should go ahead / go forward and try	2 This is the village which / where the Dolgan
	mobile living sometime. You have nothing	people live.
	to lose!	3 The children, who / which are still very young,
5		help with all the work they can.
	who are homeless. It's not funny at all.	4 The Arctic, where / which hardly anybody lives, is one of the hardest places on earth to survive.

7 Read the video script. Underline any words or phrases you don't know and translate them into your language.

	On the move	
	It is winter. We are far above the Arctic Circle and	
	this is a typical Dolgan village. It is home to just two	
	extended families. These people, who are originally	
	from central Asia, came here during the eighteenth	
5	century to look after reindeer. Here, in the coldest	
	part of the Arctic, life is very hard. The only way to get	
	water for nine months of the year is to melt ice from	
	the frozen rivers.	
	Outside it is absolutely freezing, with temperatures in	
0	the winter as low as -40°C. Survival is only possible	
	because of reindeer fur, which makes very warm	
	clothing. This warm clothing is especially important for	
	the children. But the Dolgan even use reindeer fur to	
	insulate their huts as well.	
5	5 Community is very important to the Dolgan people.	
,	Everybody helps each other. Good relationships are	
	The second secon	
	essential here, so they all get on well. Reindeer are so valuable that the people only eat them if they have to.	
	Their favourite food is raw fish from the frozen rivers.	
		7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7
0	Every week or so, these families get ready to travel	
	once more. They must find new grounds for their	
	herds. If they didn't move, the reindeer would die	
	because of the lack of food. First, they round up their	
	strongest animals with lassos. This is a skill which their	
5	5 ancestors brought with them from central Asia. Then,	
	literally, they move house. There is a lot to carry, but a	
	whole Dolgan village can be taken down and moved	
	in just a few hours. Over a year, these nomadic people	
	travel hundreds of miles like this across the vast frozen	
0	o tundra.	
	The first Dolgan people came to the Arctic a long	
	time ago because of the large number of reindeer	
	all over this area. Their ancestors still follow the same	
	lifestyle today. Here man and reindeer live in perfect	
5	5 harmony. Moving is not just good for them – they	
	could not live in any other way.	



No time for crime

VOCABULARY

Criminals | The law | Action verbs

GRAMMAR

Present and Past Simple passive | have/get something done

READING

Multiple choice

LISTENING

Identifying main points
Multiple choice

SPEAKING

Persuading and reassuring

ENGLISH IN USE

Negative prefixes for adjectives

BBC CULTURE

Is chewing gum a crime?

VOCABULARY

Crime

I can talk about crime and criminals.

1 (Complete the words in the definitions.
	Complete the words in the deministration

- 1 A thief takes things that belong to other people.
- 2 A v ___ _ l breaks things in public places.
- 3 A p_______t takes small things from your pocket.
- 4 A s_____r takes things from shops without paying.
- 5 Ab_____r goes into people's homes and takes things.
- 6 A r____r takes money from a bank or business.

2 WORD FRIENDS Look at pictures A-D and complete sentences 1-5 with the words below.

breaking into committing damaging robbing stealing









- 1 The man in picture A is breaking into someone's house.
- 2 The woman in picture B is _____ some jewellery.
- 3 The men in picture C are _____ a bank.
- 4 The man in picture D is _____ a car.
- 5 The people in the pictures are all _____ crimes.

3 word BUILDING Choose the correct option.

- 1 The police finally caught the burglars) burglaries.
- 2 We're lucky because there isn't much vandals / vandalism in this town.
- 3 The bank robbers / robberies got away with over £500,000.
- 4 They accused her of shoplifters / shoplifting, but she said she was only trying the coat on.
- 5 A pickpocket / pickpocketing stole my phone.
- 6 She is very upset by the thief / theft of her jewels.

4 Match 1-6 with a-f to make sentences.

- 1 C She had to pay a £300
- 2 The bank has offered a
- 3 | I want to study
- 4 The judge didn't send him to
- 5 What would be a suitable
- 6 You will need a good
- a reward of £10,000 for information about the crime.
- b punishment for this crime?
- c fine for shoplifting.
- d lawyer to persuade the judge you are innocent.
- e prison because he was so young.
- f Law at university.

_	•	_			
5	wi	Complet th the words se extra work	below		
	I	court jail j punishment		law	lawyer
	1	Matt spent for his crime		years	in <i>jai</i>
	2	Everyone in shocked by terrible crim	the de		
	3	He can exp			
	4	Theevidence at long some of in prison.	nd dec	ides ł	now
	5	The state of the s			, yo
	6	Jen got a _ taking the r police station	nissing		
6	an	Choose	the cor	rect	
	1	The police thieves down	n the s	treet.	
	2	Be careful y off that wal	ļ!		
		a fall			c pul
	3	Don't leave Someone w them.			
		a climb	b cho	ase	c trip
	4	There were officers the still manage	re, but ed to	the ro	bber
		a escape			
	5	She hurt he			iuse down

the stairs. a fell

c jumped

a climb

c chase

b pushed

6 He managed to _____ out of the window and get away.

b pull

The West	bury Tim	es		
They need to learn Two teenagers we yesterday. The to sprayed paint ov put up with 2, go to 3, will be serious en	ere arrested for ¹ wo boys broke er it. The police of this kind but the police h	windows in the said the common. The teenagers	he building and nunity would no sare too young t	d ot o
nformation neede	d			
the town's art gal The alarm sound criminals manag gallery is offering the two paintings	ed at the gallery ed to ⁸ of g a ⁹ of	and the police through a ba	arrived, but th ck door. The ar	e rt
Brave grandmothe	r catches a crimin	al		
Seventy-two-year when she saw a station on Saturo him when he ¹²	ostea day. She 11	ling someone's after the 'It makes me re	s wallet near th man and caugh eally angry whe	e nt n
	will appear in ¹⁴ _			У
with it!' The man	will appear in ¹⁴ _			
with it!' The man 1 a robbing 2 a burglar	(b) damaging b burglary	tomo	rrow.	ing
with it!' The man 1 a robbing 2 a burglar 3 a jail	b damaging b burglary b fine	c stealing c vandal c reward	d committed vandalis	ing
1 a robbing 2 a burglar 3 a jail 4 a law	(b) damaging b burglary b fine b punishment	c stealing c vandal c reward c court	d committed vandalised judged reward	ing m
with it!' The man 1 a robbing 2 a burglar 3 a jail	(b) damaging b burglary b fine b punishment	c stealing c vandal c reward	d committed vandalis	ing m kets

	d lobbing	b during	c steaming	u	committing
2	a burglar	b burglary	c vandal	d	vandalism
3	a jail	b fine	c reward	d	judge
4	a law	b punishment	c court	d	reward
5	a shoplifters	b vandals	c thieves	d	pickpockets
6	a put	b broke	c sent	d	escaped
7	a robbed	b committed	c stole	d	put
8	a escape	b chase	c pull	d	catch
9	a fine	b reward	c punishment	d	law
10	a shoplifter	b vandal	c pickpocket	d	burglar
11	a fell	b pulled	c pushed	d	chased
12	a escaped	b tripped	c pulled	d	pushed
13	a commit	b do	c have	d	get
14	a judge	b law	c fine	d	court



I can use verbs in the Passive.

Complete the table. Which four verbs are regular?

Verb	Past Simple	Past Participle
ask	asked	¹ asked
catch	2	caught
chase	chased	3
hide	4	hidden
know	knew	5
make	6	made
read	read	7
see	8	seen
sell	sold	9
use	10	used
watch	watched	11
write	12	written

2 Choose the correct option.

- 1 The two robbers was / were caught as they were leaving the bank.
- 2 A lot of science is / are used to solve crimes nowadays.
- 3 A secret microphone was / were hidden under her clothes.
- 4 Sometimes ordinary people is / are asked to help the police with information.
- 5 CCTV cameras *isn't / aren't* used in the shopping centre.
- 6 The thieves wasn't / weren't seen by anyone.

3 Order the words to make sentences.

1 my / stolen / purse / pickpocket / was / a / by

My purse was stolen by a pickpocket.

- 2 every year / a lot of / mobile phones / stolen / are
- 3 asked / she / a lot of questions / the police / by / was
- 4 some / reported / aren't / to / the police / crimes
- 5 your/car/when/stolen/was/?
- 6 CCTV cameras / are / here / used /?

4	Complete the second sentence so that it
	means the same as the first sentence. Use no
	more than three words.

- 1 They hid the paintings in the back of their van. The paintings were hidden in the back of their van.
- 2 People don't use guns in many robberies.
 Guns ______ in many robberies.
- 3 A shop assistant caught the shoplifter.

 The shoplifter _____ a shop assistant.
- 4 Millions of people watch crime dramas on TV.

 Crime dramas _____ millions of people on TV.
- 5 Did they send the thief to prison? Was ______ to prison?
- 6 People steal a lot of jewellery from this shop.
 A lot of jewellery _____ this shop.
- 7 They didn't find the missing money.
 The missing money
- 8 Do they send children to prison there?
 _______ to prison there?

5 Complete the article with the correct passive form of the verbs below.

announce create help know make publish solve watch

The Belgian detective

The character of the Belgian detective Hercule Poirot ¹was created by the writer Agatha Christie in the 1920s. Between 1920 and 1975 over 800 Poirot novels and short stories ²______. In the stories, Poirot sometimes works alone, but usually he ³______ by his assistant, Captain Hastings. Poirot always dresses smartly and he ⁴_____ for his neat moustache and his polite manners. He is very intelligent and believes that all crimes ⁵_____ by using the 'little grey cells' in your brain.

A lot of the Poirot stories ⁶_______ into popular films in the 1970s, and even today stories about Poirot ⁷______ by millions of people each year on TV. When, finally, Poirot's death ⁸_____ in a 1975 novel, an article about his life appeared in the newspaper *The Times*, as if he had been a real person!



READING and VOCABULARY

I can find specific detail in an article and talk about solving crimes.

Complete the words in the sentences.

- 1 The police are interviewing a witness who saw the robbery take place.
- 2 It will take a very clever
 d____t__e to catch
 this criminal!
- 3 The police questioned the s__p__t, but he didn't admit that he was guilty.
- 4 This is a very difficult c—e because there is very little evidence.
- 5 The police found Morton's f_____s on the murder weapon.
- 6 The thieves were seen on the C____V c___s in the shop.

CSI: fact or fiction?

When the American crime series *CSI (Crime Scene Investigation)* was first shown on TV in 2000, it was an immediate hit and soon led on to more shows such as *CSI New York* and *CSI Miami*. The series took the traditional idea of a detective story, but showed for the first time how modern scientific methods are used to study things such as fingerprints, hair and blood samples in order to solve crimes. Despite some criticisms, the series has continued to be very popular and is watched by millions of people around the world.

In the series, the investigators are shown as having quite glamorous lives. They are usually the first people to arrive at the scene of a crime. Working as a team, they eventually manage to catch the bad guys using both high-tech science and traditional police detective work. The real police seem to be irrelevant, as the Crime Scene Investigators interview witnesses, question suspects and often catch the criminals after dramatic chase scenes.

Of course, this isn't quite the same

2 Read the article. Choose the correct answers.

- 1 What does the writer say about the first CSI shows?
 - a They attracted a lot of criticism.
 - b They were less popular than CSI New York.
 - c They were popular immediately.
 - d Everything about them was new.
- 2 What do we learn about the work of CSIs in the series?
 - a They work closely with the police.
 - b Their jobs seem to be very exciting.
 - c They develop new scientific techniques to solve crimes.
 - d They usually solve crimes through science alone.
- 3 How is real life different, according to the writer?
 - a In real life the police only use old-fashioned ways of solving crimes.
 - b CSIs never leave their laboratories in real life.
 - c The job of a real CSI is very boring.
 - d CSIs in real life don't catch criminals.
- 4 What effect has the TV series had?
 - a It has encouraged more young people to study science.
 - b It has reduced the amount of crime.
 - c It has encouraged more people to join the police.
 - d Criminals learned to avoid leaving evidence at crime scenes.
- 5 What is the writer's main aim in the text?
 - a to describe the TV series in detail
 - b to explain how real CSIs catch criminals
 - c to discuss how realistic the series is
 - d to encourage people to learn more about the work of CSIs

as the real world. In real life it's the police who question suspects and solve crimes. Although science can help the police, old-fashioned ways of investigating crimes are still very important. It's true that real CSIs visit crime scenes, but the majority of their work after that takes place in the laboratory. They are scientists, trying to make sense of the samples they have collected. This doesn't mean their work is boring, but it isn't as exciting as in the TV series and they certainly don't get involved in arresting criminals.

The CSI series has had a big impact. It has made people aware of all the detailed work that is needed to help the police solve crimes. Some people were worried that the series might teach criminals how to



avoid being caught, but this hasn't happened. There is still a lot of crime, and criminals are still leaving plenty of clues. The popularity of the series has led to an increased interest in science subjects among young people who are keen to become tomorrow's CSIs. Let's hope they aren't disappointed by the reality of the job!



I can use the construction have/get something done.

- 1 Order the words to make sentences.
 - 1 last summer / had / I / painted / my / bedroom I had my bedroom painted last summer.
 - 2 get / teeth / you / your / should / regularly / checked
 - 3 sofa / can / you / delivered / have / the / to your house
 - 4 often / how / cleaned / the / you / do / get / windows /?
 - 5 stolen / his / wallet / last week / he / had
 - 6 getting / dress / a / she's / for her wedding / made
- 2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs below.

get/clean get/cut get/repair have/steal have/take have/test



1 She <u>gets</u> her hair <u>cut</u> once a month.



2 He needs to his car



3 He's _____ his eyes ____ right now.



4 They all love ____ their photo



5 She her bike yesterday.



6 He needs to _____

- - We could ask someone to deliver a pizza if you like. (get)
 We could get a pizza delivered if you like.
 - 2 I want someone to pierce my ears. (have)
 I want to ______.
 - 3 An expert designed their garden. (had)
 They ______ by an expert.
 - You should ask a doctor to check that injury. (get)You should _______ by a doctor.
- 4 Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs below.

get/check get/fit get/put up have/connect have/make have/replace

Can you burglar-proof your house?

Maybe not completely, but security experts think	(
it is worth ¹ having a few changes made to your	•
home to make it safer. A lot of people think	
² a signsaying 'Beware	
of the dog' is a good idea, but according to the	
experts, most criminals know that family pets	
aren't usually dangerous. Locks are important,	
though. You should 3 any old locks	
with more modern ones. Modern	
locks are harder for criminals to open. It's also a	
good idea to 4 an alarm	
You can 5 the alarm to	
the local police station so the police are alerted	
immediately. If you're uncertain about what	
changes to make to your home, you should thin	k
about ⁶ your home by a	
security expert.	

5	Complete the dialogues
	with one word in each gap.

OUT of class

- 1 A: What's in this pan?
 - B: Watch _____. It's hot!
- 2 A: Tess is going to organise the food for the party.
 - B: That's _____. Now we need to decide who to invite.

8.5

LISTENING and VOCABULARY

A crime

I can identify main points in speech and talk about discovering a crime.

1	WORD FRIENDS	Complete the text with the words below
---	--------------	--

area clues crime criminal fingerprints witnesses

When you get to a crime scene, it's important to search the 1area first and look for 2 . Then you should interview all the 3 and take 4 of any suspects. When you are sure who is guilty, you can arrest the 5 and solve the 6 !

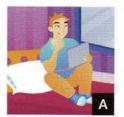
- 2 5 Listen to some people talking about crimes. Choose the correct answers.
 - 1 What did the thieves take?







2 What was Dan doing when the burglary happened?

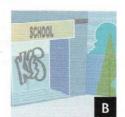






3 What did the vandals do?







4 What happened at the station?







5 Who stole the computer game?







3	26 Listen to a police		
	officer talking about		
	a crime. Order the events.		

a [Sergeant Linfield went	
	to the house.	

b [Police officers took
	fingerprints and
	looked for clues.

c [Sergeant Linfield
	called the number
	labelled 'Home'.

d _	Mrs Jones found
	a mobile phone in
	the garden.

е	1	Mr and Mrs Jones
		reported a burglar

f	Sergeant Linfield
	caught the burglar

g [Sergeant Linfield
	interviewed Mr and
	Mrs Jones.

4 (3) 27 Listen to a news report. Complete the notes.

Place of robbery: 1 on Park Street	
Date of robbery:	
Amount of money stolen: 3 £	
Number of suspects:	
Colour of suspects' car:	

Number to call if you have information:

SPEAKING

Persuading and reasurring

I can persuade and reassure someone.

1		omplet	te the se	entend	ces with t	he w	ords
	I	come	course	fine	practise	try	worry
	1	Come	on! It's	not d	ifficult!		
	2	I knov	22		done it be ght like it!		. Just
	3	Of_)		•		
	4	Don't		! Eve	erything v	vill be	e OK.
	5	You'll	be	1			

2	Match	1-6 with	a-f to	make	sentences.
	MUCCII	I O WILLI	4 1 10	HILLIANC	Scrittences.

6 I know you're not very good at it yet. Just _ a bit more and try again.

1	e I don't	a	I can do
2	lt's	b	try.
3	l'm sure you	С	you try?
4	l suppose	d	alright.
5	OK, I'll	е	know.
6	Why don't	f	can do i

3 Write the phrases below in the correct column.

Come on! Don't worry! I don't know. I know you can do it. I suppose I can do it. It's OK. Just try it. OK, I'll try. Please!

Persuading someone	Reassuring someone	Responding
Come on!		

4 Choose the correct responses.

- 1 I feel really nervous!
 - a Please!
 - (b) You'll be fine.
 - c I don't know.
- 2 I don't know if I'll enjoy acting.
 - a OK, I'll try.
 - b I don't know.
 - c Why don't you try?
- 3 Of course you can do it!
 - a OK, I'll try.
 - b Come on!
 - c Please!
- 4 What if I make a mistake?
 - a I suppose I can do it.
 - b Don't worry!
 - c Please!

I		you give me a hand? you go. Oh my goodness!
1		Hi, Charlie!
7/	В:	You gave me a fright. I didn't know you were there.
	A:	•
2	A:	This box is really heavy.
	B:	Of course.
3	A:	I have to go now, to catch my bus.
	B:	OKI'll see you later.

l	course	е	fine	just	know	please	suppose
	sure	try	We	erry			

Amy: Hi, Sam. You don't look very happy.

	exam in abo	ut half an hour.	
Amy:	Don't ¹ worry! It'll be ²		
	really good o	it English.	
Sam:	I don't 3	Sometimes I just forg	jе

Sam: No, I'm not. I've got my English speaking

everything in exams. Amy: I'm ⁴_____you can do it! Good luck!

Sam: Thanks, Amy.

Sara: Hi, Jade. Rob and I are going ice-skating on Saturday. Do you want to come?

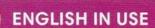
Jade: I don't know. I've never done ice-skating before.

Sara: Oh 5 ____! It'll be fun. Jade: But what if I can't do it?

Sara: Of 6_____you can do it! You're really

good at sport. Jade: OK, I'll 7_

Sara: Great!



Negative prefixes for adjectives

I can form and use negative adjectives.

1 Write the negative form of the adjectives below in the correct group.

comfortable correct healthy honest legal logical patient pleased possible regular relevant visible

Negative prefix	Negative adjective
un-	uncomfortable,
dis-	
im-	
in-	
il-	
ir-	·····

2 Match the negative form of the adjectives below with the definitions.

correct intelligent interesting legible polite usual

1	unintelligent: not clever
2	: not normal
3	: very difficult to read
4	: not right
5	: rude
6	: boring

- 3 Complete the sentences with negative adjectives from Exercises 1 and 2.
 - 1 Henry hates waiting. He's really *impatient*.
 - 2 I can't read your handwriting. It's so messy it's completely ______!
 - 3 Chocolate is very bad for you. It's really

1	No one can walk on water - it's!

- 5 If you do something _____, the police will come after you.
- 6 That's a very _____ plant I've never seen one like it before.
- 4 Choose the correct option.
 - 1 I don't like sitting on this chair. It's irregular / uncomfortable
 - 2 These creatures are so small that you can't see them. They're invisible / irresponsible.
 - 3 Jack never tells the truth. He's illegible / dishonest.
 - 4 I didn't do my homework, so my teacher was unusual / displeased.

- 5 This isn't a real clue. It's very irrelevant / impossible.
- 6 I didn't enjoy that lesson. It was really displeased / uninteresting.
- 5 Read the article. Choose the correct answers.

THE ART OF POLICE WORK
Everyone would agree that being a police officer is
a very ¹ job, and it is important to catch
people who behave in ² ways. But it isn't
always easy to find the person who has committed
a crime, and sometimes the police make mistakes.
Sometimes officers are ³ to find the
criminal who has committed a terrible crime and
sometimes they act too quickly because they are
worried the public will be ⁴ if they don't
catch someone quickly. Individual officers can
sometimes act in ⁵ ways too, and believe
someone is guilty just because they don't like them.
The way to do good police work is always to follow
all the clues in a ⁶ way, even if they seem
small and ⁷
to may sometimes be 8 , but hopefully,
they will be ⁹

1 (a) responsible c legible b irresponsible d illegible 2 a honest c regular b dishonest d irregular 3 a usual c patient b unusual d impatient 4 a logical c pleased b illogical d displeased 5 a fair c important b unfair d unimportant 6 a possible c logical b impossible d illogical 7 a important c pleased **b** unimportant **d** displeased 8 a intelligent c expected **b** unintelligent d unexpected

9 a correct

b incorrect

c patient

d impatient



SELF-ASSESSMENT

For each learning objective, tick (🗸) the box that best matches your ability.

○ ○ = I understand and can help a friend.

= I understand but have some questions.

c = I understand and can do it by myself.

		00	\odot	8	88	Need help?	Now try
8.1	Vocabulary					Students' Book pp. 94–95 Workbook pp. 90–91	Ex. 1–3, p. 99
8.2	Grammar					Students' Book p. 96 Workbook p. 92	Ex. 4, p. 99
8.3	Reading					Students' Book p. 97 Workbook p. 93	
8.4	Grammar					Students' Book p. 98 Workbook p. 94	Ex. 5, p. 99
8.5	Listening					Students' Book p. 99 Workbook p. 95	
8.6	Speaking					Students' Book p. 100 Workbook p. 96	Ex. 7, p. 99
8.7	English in Use					Students' Book p. 101 Workbook p. 97	Ex. 6, p. 99

- 8.1 I can talk about crime and criminals.
- 8.2 I can use verbs in the Passive.
- 8.3 I can find specific detail in an article and talk about solving crimes.
- 8.4 I can use the construction have/get something done.
- 8.5 I can identify main points in speech and talk about discovering a crime.
- 8.6 I can persuade and reassure someone.
- 8.7 I can form and use negative adjectives.

What can you remember from this unit?

New words I learned (the words you most want to remember from this unit)	Expressions and phrases I liked (any expressions or phrases you think sound nice, useful or funny)	english I heard or read outside class (e.g. from websites, books, adverts, films, music)



SELF-CHECK

Vocabulary

1	Match the words belo	ow with the
	definitions.	

fine	jail	judge	shoplifter	theft	vanda

- 1 someone who steals things from shops
- 2 an amount of money that someone has to pay as a punishment_
- 3 a place where criminals are sent as a punishment.
- 4 someone who damages buildings or things in public places
- 5 the crime of stealing things
- 6 someone in a court who decides what punishment a criminal should receive

2 Choose the correct option.

- 1 They climbed / pulled out of the window when the fire got out of control.
- 2 The two men were accused of stealing / robbing a bank.
- 3 We must find out who committed / made this crime.
- 4 She chased / tripped the pickpocket down the street.
- 5 Someone sent / broke into our house last night.
- 6 Hurry up we need to fall / escape!

3 Complete the sentences with the words below. There are two extra words.

ı	arrest	clue	d	etective	fingerprints	look
ı	solve	suspec	t	witness		

- I'm sure we can ___ _ this crime.
- 2 The police took his _____ _and found they were the same as the ones on the gun.
- 3 It is the job of the police to ____ criminals.
- 4 There was only one saw what happened.
- 5 The police thought that the watch was an important
- 6 The police caught the when he tried to sell the jewellery online.

Grammar

evidence now.

4 Complete the sentences with the correct passive form of the verbs in brackets.

1	CCTV cameras	(use) in many cities.
2	He (arres	st) yesterday for the theft.
3	The stolen money	(find) two days after
	the robbery in the ba	ck of a car.
4	A lot of crime	(solve) using scientific

5 Find and correct the mistakes in the sentences.

We need to get our TV repair.

4 He's having a new suit make.

2	I had my bike stealing.
3	Shall we get delivered a pizza?

6 Complete the sentences with the negative form of the

adjectives below. There are two extra words.

I	correct	fair	possible	legal	relevant	usual	
1	It's		to dri	ve befo	ore you're	old enough	•
2	No, tha	t's		It's n	ot the rig	ht answer.	
3	This is o		lly difficul	t case.	I think it's		

Speaking language practice

to be late.

4 Jack's usually here on time. It's ___

7 Complete the dialogues with the words below.

don't know fine OK suppose sure try worry

_	
Α	
A:	Tara and I are going to a dance workshop next weekend. Do you want to come?
B:	1 ¹ I'm not very good at dancing.
A:	It'll be 2 . Why don't you 3 ?
В:	Yes, you're right. ⁴ , I'll try. I guess it might be fun!
В	
A:	I'm really nervous because I've got to sing a sona in our next show.

B: Don't ⁵ ! You've got a lovely voice.

1	Match verbs 1–6 with nouns a–f to	4 Choose the correct option.
	make word friends.	1 The underground vault used / (is used) by local diamond
	1 b burgle a laws	dealers.
	2 chew b a house	2 The robbers disconnected / was disconnected all the
	3 get c gum	CCTV cameras, except one.
	4 go to d criminals	3 The robber's face hid / was hidden from the camera.
	5 catch e a fine	4 The vault located / is located in the basement of
	6 pass f prison	the building
^		5 They brought in the tools that used / were used to get the
2	Complete the sentences with the	jewels.
	word friends in Exercise 1. Which	6 They forced / were forced open the security door from
	sentences do you agree with / are true for you?	inside the lift.
		7 It seemed / was seemed to be the perfect crime.
	 Someone can easily <u>burgle a</u> <u>house</u> if it doesn't have an alarm. 	8 The police caught / were caught the robbers in the end.
	2 It's not enough to for speeding. The driver should be banned.	5 Match pictures A-C with sentences 1-3.
	3 It's not illegal to in my country. I think it's a great habit!	
	4 In my country, the police don't	
	always There are	
	some unsolved crimes.	
	5 I think too many people for petty crimes.	A B
	That's why the prisons are so full	
	these days.	1 The CCTV images of the robbery were analysed.
	6 We need to all the	2 The police recorded the robbers' conversations.
	time because there are lots of	3 The robbers' cars were followed.
	new crimes.	The respect date were removed.
3	Choose the correct option.	6 Complete the sentences with the word friends below.
	 Many people in Iceland leave their bicycles unlocked) unstuck. 	big challenge crime scene jewellery quarter legal history perfect crime security door
	2 Hong Kong is considered /	
	needed to be one of the safest	1 The police caught the robbers in the end but it was
	countries in the world.	almost the <i>perfect crime</i> .
	3 If you have your bag stolen /	2 The robbery took place in London's
	robbed, you should call the police.	3 The for the robbers was a fifty-centimetre concrete wall.
	4 In Finland fines for certain crimes	4 It is the greatest robbery in Britain's

5 They had to climb down the lift and open the

6 The police presented lots of photos from the

are based / caught on the

5 Chewing gum can get stuck / bought on pavements.

6 You are not happened / allowed to sing on the streets in Hong

criminal's income.

Kong.

7 Read the video script. Underline any words or phrases you don't know and translate them into your language.

A famous robbery

Part 1

In April 2015, just before the long Easter weekend, London's most famous jewellery vault was robbed in a spectacular operation. It seemed like something from a film. Professional robbers stole millions of pounds worth of diamonds from safe deposit boxes which were kept in the vault.

The vault in central London's well-known jewellery quarter is called the Hatton Garden Safe Deposit Company. It was opened in the 1950s and had an underground vault which was used by local diamond dealers to store their jewels. It was considered one of the safest in the country.

On Thursday 2 April 2015, at 21.19, the operation started. The robbers disconnected all the CCTV cameras except one. At 21.23, one robber appeared with a large black sack, but his face was hidden from the camera.

The first challenge was how to get into the vault, which was located in the basement. The robbers had crucial information about this building and worked out that if they could climb down inside the lift, they could eventually enter the vault. They climbed down the inside of the lift using ropes. Then they forced open this security door from the lift. Now they were just one step away from the security boxes with the jewels inside. On the streets above, no one knew that one of the biggest ever robberies was happening.

It was now twenty past midnight, just three hours after the start ²⁵ of the operation. The next big challenge was to drill through the wall of the vault – it was fifty centimeters thick. We tried it out here with some drilling specialists. It took us just two hours and twenty minutes to drill exactly the same holes as the robbers.

Part 2

30 Once inside the vault, they could open the safe deposit boxes. It's easy to do with a simple hammer. Look! You can crack these open in just five minutes!

The police only discovered the robbery two days after the robbers escaped with the jewels, or 'the loot'. Nobody knows how so much they escaped with. They were eventually captured by the police six months later. Their downfall was the technology they used. The police were much smarter; they traced their mobile phones, analysed the CCTV images, recorded their conversations and followed their cars. It was the end to an amazing story, to what seemed to be the perfect crime. The police eventually solved the mystery of the largest burglary in English legal history.

·
Annual and an annual and an annual and an
######################################

9

Think outside the box

VOCABULARY

School subjects | Learning and assessment | Describing students | Phrasal verbs

GRAMMAR

Word order in questions | Mixed tenses

READING

Matching headings to paragraphs | True/False

LISTENING

Identifying specific information | Multiple choice

SPEAKING

Exchanging personal information

WRITING

A letter giving information

BBC CULTURE

Can school be fun?

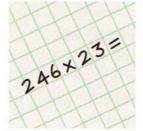
VOCABULARY

Education

I can talk about school life.

2

1 look at the pictures and write the school subjects.







1 Maths

~1492 ~





5 _____

0

- **2** Write the correct school subject for each definition.
 - 1 You read books and plays in this subject. Literature
 - You learn about the world and different countries in this subject. G
 - 3 This subject teaches you how to look after your body so you aren't ill. **H**_____
 - 4 In this subject you discuss important ideas, like the meaning of life. **P**_____
 - 5 You need to learn this if you want to visit London.
 - 6 You learn about different chemicals in this subject.
- 3 Read the comments and write the school subjects.
- 1 I think it's important to learn these, so you can talk to people from different countries. Languages
- 2 I really enjoy learning about the law in my country, and how to vote.
- 3 I'm working hard at this subject because I will need it when I go to France next summer.
- 4 I love sport so, of course, this is my favourite subject!
- 5 This is a difficult science subject, but I study it because one day I want to be an astronaut!
- 6 My parents are from Spain so, of course, this subject is really easy for me!

4		Choose the corre	ct answers.
	1	l loveabo	out how people live in
		a studying (b	learning c revising
	2	Don't forget: you n	eed to hand in your
		a project b	
	_	c practical exam	
	3	I can't come out to for my G	eography test.
			revise c memorise
	4	Englishe	
		a practical b c speaking	*
	5	, , ,	
		next year or will yo language?	u choose a different
		a study b c memorise	revise
	6	We have to produc	ce a drawing for our
		a performance b	written exam
5	•	Complete the v	vords in the sentences.
5	1		vords in the sentences. Le <u>a</u> rn irregular verbs.
5		I find it difficult to I usually sy	l <u>e a r</u> n irregular verbs.
5	1	I find it difficult to I usually sy every evening. It's difficult to m	l <u>e a r</u> n irregular verbs.
5	1 2	I find it difficult to I usually sy every evening. It's difficult to m_ poem!	l <u>e a r</u> n irregular verbs. For about an hour
5	1 2 3	I find it difficult to I usually sy to every evening. It's difficult to m poem! I need to rve	l <u>e a r</u> n irregular verbs. For about an hour
5	1 2 3	I find it difficult to I usually sy to every evening. It's difficult to mt poem! I need to rve We have a pc Cookery – we have	le a rn irregular verbs. for about an hour me a whole for my Maths exam. c_l em in e to cook a meal!
5	1 2 3	I find it difficult to I usually sy to every evening. It's difficult to mt poem! I need to rve We have a pc Cookery - we hav For our music exa	le a rn irregular verbs. for about an hour me a whole e for my Maths exam. c_l em in e to cook a meal! m we have to give
5	1 2 3 4 5	I find it difficult to I usually sy to every evening. It's difficult to mt poem! I need to rve We have a pc Cookery - we hav For our music exa	le a rn irregular verbs. for about an hour me a whole for my Maths exam. c_l em in e to cook a meal!
5	1 2 3 4 5	I find it difficult to I usually sy to every evening. It's difficult to mt poem! I need to rve We have a pc Cookery - we hav For our music exa a pfm	le a rn irregular verbs. for about an hour me a whole e for my Maths exam. c_l em in e to cook a meal! m we have to give
	1 2 3 4 5	I find it difficult to I usually sy to every evening. It's difficult to mt poem! I need to rve We have a pc Cookery - we hav For our music exa a pfm	le a rn irregular verbs. for about an hour — e a whole e for my Maths exam. — c_l e_ m in e to cook a meal! m we have to give — e on our instrument. — e to make sentences.
	1 2 3 4 5 6 1 2	I find it difficult to I usually sy to every evening. It's difficult to m poem! I need to rve We have a pc Cookery - we hav For our music exa a pfm Match 1-5 with a b Someone who	le a rn irregular verbs. for about an hour me a whole e for my Maths exam. c_l em in e to cook a meal! m we have to give e on our instrument. -e to make sentences. o is intelligent o is lazy
	1 2 3 4 5 6 1 2 3	I find it difficult to I usually sy to every evening. It's difficult to m poem! I need to rve We have a pc Cookery - we have For our music exa a pfm Match 1-5 with a b Someone who Someone who Someone who Someone who	le a rn irregular verbs. for about an hour — e a whole e for my Maths exam. — c_l e_ m in e to cook a meal! m we have to give — e on our instrument. — e to make sentences. o is intelligent o is lazy o is creative
	1 2 3 4 5 6 (a)	I find it difficult to I usually sy to every evening. It's difficult to m poem! I need to rve We have a pc Cookery - we hav For our music exa a pfm Match 1-5 with a b Someone who Someone who Someone who Someone who Someone who Someone who	le a rn irregular verbs. for about an hour me a whole e for my Maths exam. c_l em in e to cook a meal! m we have to give e on our instrument. -e to make sentences. o is intelligent o is lazy o is creative o is good at teamwork
	1 2 3 4 5 6 1 2 3	I find it difficult to I usually sy to every evening. It's difficult to m poem! I need to rve We have a pc Cookery - we hav For our music exa a pfm Match 1-5 with a b Someone who Someone who Someone who Someone who Someone who Someone who	le a rn irregular verbs. for about an hour — e a whole e for my Maths exam. — c_l e_ m in e to cook a meal! m we have to give — e on our instrument. — e to make sentences. o is intelligent o is lazy o is creative
	1 2 3 4 5 6 (a)	I find it difficult to I usually sy to every evening. It's difficult to m poem! I need to rve We have a pc Cookery - we have For our music exa a pfm Match 1-5 with a b Someone who Someone who Someone who Someone who Someone who knowledge	le a rn irregular verbs. for about an hour me a whole e for my Maths exam. c_l em in e to cook a meal! m we have to give e on our instrument. -e to make sentences. o is intelligent o is lazy o is creative o is good at teamwork o is good at general
	1 2 3 4 5 6 • 1 2 3 4 5	I find it difficult to I usually sy to every evening. It's difficult to m poem! I need to rve We have a pc Cookery - we hav For our music exa a pfm Match 1-5 with a b Someone who Someone who Someone who Someone who Someone who doesn't work hard	le a rn irregular verbs. for about an hour me a whole e for my Maths exam. c_l em in e to cook a meal! m we have to give e on our instrument. -e to make sentences. o is intelligent o is lazy o is creative o is good at teamwork o is good at general
	1 2 3 4 5 6	I find it difficult to I usually sy to every evening. It's difficult to m poem! I need to rve We have a pc Cookery - we hav For our music exa a pfm Match 1-5 with a b Someone who knowledge doesn't work hard is very clever and	le a rn irregular verbs. for about an hour me a whole e for my Maths exam. c_l em in e to cook a meal! m we have to give e on our instrument. -e to make sentences. o is intelligent o is lazy o is creative o is good at teamwork o is good at general learns quickly.
	1 2 3 4 5 6	I find it difficult to I usually sy to every evening. It's difficult to m poem! I need to rve We have a pc Cookery - we have For our music exa a pfm Match 1-5 with a b Someone who Someone who Someone who Someone who someone who someone who who someone who is very clever and works well with oth	le a rn irregular verbs. for about an hour me a whole e for my Maths exam. c_l em in e to cook a meal! m we have to give e on our instrument. -e to make sentences. o is intelligent o is lazy o is creative o is good at teamwork o is good at general . learns quickly. her people.

7 Choose the correct words to complete the school web page.

At Redfield School we believe in a modern approach	
to education. Of course, students here 1	
traditional subjects such as Maths and History, but t	hov
also ² more practical skills, such as	псу
	١.
, which we think are important for life. A	
well as the main subjects, there are lots of extra cla	
such as Yoga and ⁴ Design. We only have	
exams once a year and we don't expect	
students to spend a lot of time ⁶ for then	
believe that old-fashioned methods of learning such	as
lots of facts aren't important in the mo	dern
world. The internet is there to check facts, so people	
need general ⁸ in the same way that they	did
50 years ago. We believe it's more important to tea	ch our
students critical ⁹ skills so they can form	their
own opinions. We want our students to be 10	
and use their imagination in everything they do. We	also
believe that 11 is a really important skill,	
encourage our students to work with each other in	groups.
We are lucky to have a lot of 12young mi	
here, and all our music groups give a 131	
whole school at the end of each term.	

1	a	memorise	C	perform
	b	study	d	revise
2	a	learn	С	memorise
	b	revise	d	make
3	a	Chemistry	С	Cookery
	b	Physics	d	Philosophy
4	a	Photography	С	Film
	b	Fashion	d	Art
5	a	writing	С	write
	b	writer	d	written
6	a	learning	С	performing
	b	memorising	d	revising
7	a	memorising	C	revising
	b	practising	d	getting
8	a	facts	С	knowledge
	b	learning	d	understanding
9	a	understanding	С	learning
	b	thinking	d	knowledge
10	a	intelligent	С	creative
	b	lazy	d	gifted
11	a	performance	С	study
	b	teamwork	d	problem solving
12	a	lazy	С	talented
	b	practised	d	practical
13	a	project	С	teamwork

b performance

d practical exam

9.1

Think outside the box

VOCABULARY

School subjects | Learning and assessment | Describing students | Phrasal verbs

GRAMMAR

Word order in questions | Mixed tenses

READING

Matching headings to paragraphs | True/False

LISTENING

Identifying specific information | Multiple choice

SPEAKING

Exchanging personal information

WRITING

A letter giving information

BBC CULTURE

Can school be fun?

VOCABULARY

Education

I can talk about school life.

1 🔴 Look at the pictures and write the school subjects.







1 Maths



Paterning,



5

2

3

- - 1 You read books and plays in this subject. Literature
 - 2 You learn about the world and different countries in this subject. **G**_____
 - 3 This subject teaches you how to look after your body so you aren't ill. **H**_____
 - 4 In this subject you discuss important ideas, like the meaning of life. **P**_____
 - 5 You need to learn this if you want to visit London.
 - 6 You learn about different chemicals in this subject.
- **3** Read the comments and write the school subjects.
- 1 I think it's important to learn these, so you can talk to people from different countries. <u>Languages</u>
- 2 I really enjoy learning about the law in my country, and how to vote.
- 3 I'm working hard at this subject because I will need it when I go to France next summer.
- 4 I love sport so, of course, this is my favourite subject!
- 5 This is a difficult science subject, but I study it because one day I want to be an astronaut!
- 6 My parents are from Spain so, of course, this subject is really easy for me!

4	0	Choose the correct answers.	7	o complete		
	1	I love about how people live in	the school web page.			
		different countries.				
		a studying b learning c revising	At Redfield School we believe in a modern a	ipproach		
	2	Don't forget: you need to hand in your	to education. Of course, students here ¹			
	_	on Friday.	traditional subjects such as Maths and History			
		a project b performance	also ² more practical skills, such			
		c practical exam	3 , which we think are important			
	2	I can't come out tonight. I need to	well as the main subjects, there are lots of			
	3	for my Geography test.	such as Yoga and ⁴ Design. We o			
		a learn b revise c memorise	5 exams once a year and we don			
			students to spend a lot of time 6			
	4	The examiner will ask you questions in the	believe that old-fashioned methods of learn			
		English exam.	7 lots of facts aren't important in the modern world. The internet is there to check facts, so people dor			
		a practical b performance	need general 8 in the same way that they did			
		c speaking	50 years ago. We believe it's more importan	and the state of t		
	5	Are you going to Spanish	students critical ⁹ skills so they o			
		next year or will you choose a different	own opinions. We want our students to be ¹			
		language?	and use their imagination in everything the			
		a study b revise	believe that 11 is a really importa	nt skill, so w		
		c memorise	encourage our students to work with each of	other in group		
	6	We have to produce a drawing for our	We are lucky to have a lot of 12y			
		in Art. here, and all our music groups give a 15				
		a performance b written exam	whole school at the end of each term.			
		c practical exam	E STATE OF THE SECOND STAT			
=		<u> </u>	1 a memorise c perf	orm		
Э		Complete the words in the sentences.	b study d revis	e		
		I find it difficult to l <u>e</u> <u>a</u> <u>r</u> n irregular verbs.	2 a learn c men	norise		
	2	I usually sy for about an hour	b revise d mak	e		
		every evening.	3 a Chemistry c Coo	kery		
	3	It's difficult to m_m_ e a whole	b Physics d Philo	sophy		
		poem!	4 a Photography c Film			
		I need to r_ve for my Maths exam.	b Fashion d Art			
	5	We have a pcc_l em in	5 a writing c write	9		
		Cookery – we have to cook a meal!	b writer d writt	en		
	6	For our music exam we have to give	6 a learning c perf	orming		
		a pfme on our instrument.	b memorising d revis	ing		
4	-	Martala 1 E with a sate make contoness	7 a memorising c revis	ing		
0		Match 1–5 with a–e to make sentences.	b practising d gett	ing		
	1	b Someone who is intelligent		wledge		
	2	Someone who is lazy	b learning d und	erstanding		
	3	Someone who is creative		ning		
	4	Someone who is good at teamwork	b thinking d know	wledge		
	5	Someone who is good at general	10 a intelligent c cred			
		knowledge	b lazy d gifte			
	а	doesn't work hard.	11 a performance c stud	(E)		
	b			olem solvin		
	С	works well with other people.		nted		
	d	has a good imagination.	The state of the s	ctical		
		knows a lot of facts about different things.	13 a project c tear	nwork		

noose the correct words to complete web page.

well as the main subjects, there are lots of extra classes,				
such as Yoga and ⁴ Design. We only have				
exams once a year and we don't expect				
		its to spend a lot of tim		
		that old-fashioned me		
		lots of facts arer		
		The internet is there to		
		general ⁸ in t		
	-	rs ago. We believe it's		
		its critical 9		
		pinions. We want our st		
		e their imagination in e		
		e that ¹¹ is a rage our students to we		
		e lucky to have a lot of		
		and all our music group		
		school at the end of ea		
vvi	ioic	school at the cha of co	ion torm.	
		10		
1	-	memorise	С	perform
		study	d	
2		learn	С	memorise
		revise	d	make
3		Chemistry	С	Cookery
		Physics	d	Philosophy
4		Photography	C	Film
	b	Fashion	d	Art
5		writing	С	write
	b	writer	d	written
6	а	learning	С	performing
	b	memorising	d	revising
7	а	memorising	C	revising
	b	practising	d	getting
8	а	facts	C	knowledge
	b	learning	d	understanding
9	а	understanding	С	learning
	b	thinking	d	knowledge
10	a	intelligent	C	creative
	b	lazy	d	gifted
11	a	performance	C	study
		teamwork	d	problem solving
12	а	lazy	С	talented
	b	practised	d	practical
13	a	project	С	teamwork
		performance	d	practical exam
		• Mary Section Control of the Section 2		

GRAMMAR

Word order in questions

I can make questions with the correct word order.

1	Choose the correct option.	4
	1 (Why)/ What is Ted upset?	1 A: Is it raining now?
	2 How / When do your exams start?	B: No, it isn't raining now.
	3 Who / What are you going to invite to	2 A: Where?
	your party?	B: Rosie goes to school in Manchester.
	4 What / Where does the performance	3 A: When?
	take place?	B: The film finished at eight o'clock.
	5 Where / How did you get home?	4 A: Who?
	, ,	B: Mrs Cavendish teaches them French.
2	Order the words to make questions.	5 A: Who?
	1 you/OK/are/?	B: She phoned Carl.
	Are you OK?	b. The phoned Can.
	2 live / where / you / do /?	5 @ Complete the dialogue. Make questions using
		the words in brackets.
	3 you/book/did/enjoy/the/?	Rob: Hi, Dad. What are you doing (what / you / do)?
	- y,,,,,,,	Dad: I'm looking at some old photos from school.
	4 Sam's / have / met / you / brother /?	
	4 Carry Have, met, you, brother,	Rob: ² (it / be / OK) if I have a look?
	5 prize / who / the / won / ?	Dad: Yes, it's fine.
	5 prize / write / worry :	
_		(WITO / take / these
3		photos)?
	the question to fit each answer.	Dad: I can't remember who took them.
	1 Ellie and Jo told me about the party.	Rob: Wow! It looks very different to my school.
	a A: Who told you about the party?	(What / Subjects / You /
	B: Ellie and Jo.	study)?
	b A: What did Ellie and Jo tell you	Dad: Oh, we studied all the usual subjects.
	about?	Rob: 5(you / enjoy / school)?
	B: The party.	Dad: Not really. We didn't do many fun activities.
	2 Sam gave me this card.	Rob: 6(what / your teachers /
	a A: What?	be / like)?
	B: This card.	Dad: They were very strict!
	b A: Who?	Rob: 7 (who / that / be)?
	B: Sam.	Dad: My best friend, Tom. We got on really well.
		Rob: He looks cool. 8(you /
	3 Anna phoned me last night.	stay / friends) with him since you left school?
	a A: Who?	Dad: No, I haven't. He went to the USA and I haven't
	B: Anna.	heard from him for years.
	b A: Who?	THE RESIDENCE OF THE PARTY OF T
	B: Me.	6 Complete the dialogues with the
	4 Tom helped me with my homework.	phrases below. class
	a A: What?	
	B: My homework.	Good luck! I hope so.
	b A: Who?	Where do you want it?
	B: Tom.	1 A: Oh, is that the new desk for my bedroom?
		B: Yes
	5 I saw Alex and Tim at the party. a A: Who?	A: Next to the bed, please.
		2 A: Are you planning to go to university?
	B: Tim and Alex.	B: I need to pass all my exams first!
	.b A: Where?	3 A: I've got my French exam tomorrow.
	B: At the party.	B: I'm sure you'll do well



READING and VOCABULARY

Homeschooling

I can find specific deta	il in an article and talk	about intelligence.	
WORD FRIENDS Complete the se or take.	ntences with <i>make</i>	3 Read the text again. Mark the sente T (true) or F (false).	ences
1 We decided to make some im course, so it's much better not 2 Don't worry if you at Just try again and keep trying 3 I'm sure you'll progrekeep working hard. 4 It's a good idea to nhistory lessons so you've got the written down. 5 I don't understand this senten sense! 6 We have to an exame check that we understand ever the check that we understand ever the school, so we'd like to 8 Come and a look at really funny! 2 Read the article. Match heading paragraphs 1-4. a What are the advantages of his Facts and figures about home composition of the composition of th	mistake in Maths. until you get it right. ss in English if you otes during he important facts ce – it doesn't in the summer to erything we've learned. ot happy with at the a few changes. this photo – it's gs a–d with comeschooling? eschooling results?	 Homeschooling is possible in country. A study in Britain showed that homeschoolers are more successful than students at states. Fran likes being in control of her studies. Adam thinks he gets more attention now that he is homeschooled. Homeschoolers are always leading because they don't have a leading group of friends. Complete the sentences with the conform of the highlighted phrases from the text. You should make a real effort to English vocabulary. Winning this money will our lives. Sara's very independent and does enjoy from other performs the state of the service of t	onely arge orrect m learn to esn't eople. een the
Vould you prefer to stay at home o study? In many countries it is compulsory for children to attend school. In Britain, children have a legal right o an education, but it doesn't have to take place in a school. Parents can choose to teach their children at home.	Most homeschoolers speak of their experiences. Fran, fifthaving the freedom to spend time on subjects she likes. 'At there's a set programme of sall students have to follow. It to take instructions from teach	een, enjoys quite interesting social lives. However psychologists warn that some studer who are homeschooled may have difficulties later in life. Dr Rob Alexandon't have says, 'School isn't just about education's says and says and says are says and says and says are says are says and says are says and says are says are says are says and says are s	ing or, onts on

Around 36,000 students are currently

homeschooled in Britain, and the number is growing.

It's difficult to make comparisons between the achievements of homeschooled students and those of students at school. However, studies in the USA, where homeschooling is more popular, have shown that students educated at home often achieve better results in national tests than those in school. In Britain homeschooled students regularly get places at top universities.

follow my own interests more and explore subjects in more depth.' Adam, fourteen, also sees benefits to homeschooling. 'Teachers in schools have thirty students to think about. I have a tutor just for me. I love the fact that I can ask lots of questions, and he can really help me to understand things. That makes a big difference to me.'

People often assume that the biggest problem for homeschoolers is loneliness. In fact, this isn't the case. Most parents of homeschoolers make a real effort

students learn teamwork, and they learn how to deal with a wide range of different personalities. You can't get that at home.'





I can use a variety of tenses.

1	Complete the sentences with the verbs below.
	There are two extra verbs.

didn't have haven't had left 'm going to go 'm seeing plays 's playing were living

- 1 My parents were living in London when I was born.
- 2 I _____ Tom tomorrow evening, so I can ask him about the project then.
- 3 We _____ our exam results yet. I hope I've done well!
- 4 Jack's upstairs at the moment I think he ______
 computer games.
- 5 My brother _____ school last year and now he's looking for a job.
- 6 I _____ online tonight, to find some information for my project.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs below. Use the Present Simple, Present Continuous or Present Perfect.

break change listen love study try

- 1 What <u>are</u> you <u>studying</u> in Biology at the moment?
- 2 A lot of things _____ at our school in the last two years it's very different now!
- 3 Dan never _____ to the teacher, so he doesn't know what homework to do.
- 4 Be guiet I _____ to revise!
- 5 Amy isn't at school today because she her leg.
- 6 | Maths it's my favourite subject!
- Read some students' excuses for not doing their homework. Complete them with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Use the Past Simple or Past Continuous.

1 ¹ fell (fall) asleep while 1 ²	(watch) TV. While	
1 3 (sleep), my dog 4	(take) my	
homework outside and ⁵	(bury) it in the garden.	

16	(spill) water on my school bag while I
7	(help) my mum in the kitchen. Unfortunately,
all my books 8	(get) wet!

The school bus 9	(arrive) ed	arly this morning,
while I 10	(have) breakfast.	[11]
(leave) the house quickly and I 12		(forget) my
homework. Sorry!		

4 Oose the correct option.

- 1 I'm sure you will get)/ are getting good marks in your exams next week.
- 2 How many people are you going to / do you invite to the party next month?
- 3 Hurry up the train leaves / will leave in five minutes!
- 4 Do you want to come to the cinema with us this evening? We will meet / are meeting outside the cinema at 6.30.
- 5 I think that in the future students are studying / will study at home more.
- 6 What are you going to do / do you do to celebrate the end of exams next week?
- 5 Complete the article with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

The world's biggest school

The City of Montessori School in Lucknow, India, 1holds (hold) the world record for the world's largest school, with over 50,000 students! The school first 2 (open) in 1959, with only five students. Dr Jagdish Gandhi, the founder of the school, says it was difficult to get students at first. He and his wife 3 (work) very hard in the first few years while they (try) to achieve their dream of a good school for their city. The school (grow) a lot since those early days. It now 6 (employ) 3,800 teachers, and lessons 7 place) at twenty different sites across the city. And it 8 (still / grow)! The next school year 9 (start) in June, and who knows how many students (be) by that time!



LISTENING and VOCABULARY

Awkward moments

I can identify specific information in a dialogue and talk about awkward moments.

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the phrasal verbs below.

calm down fill in get on hand in hand out look over look up mess-about

1 Archie shouldn't mess about in class all the time – he needs to work harder.

2 The teacher wants us to _____ our projects on Friday, but I haven't started mine yet!

3 Remember to leave time at the end of the exam to _____ all your answers.

4 _____! There's nothing to be upset or angry about.

5 I keep my dictionary with me so I can words that I don't know.

6 It's time to stop playing computer games and _____ with your homework!

7 You have to _____ a form to join the gym.

8 Tanya, please ____ these books - one to every pair of students.

2 Listen to some people talking about school life. Choose the correct answers.

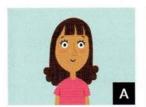
1 What did the teacher catch the girl doing in class?







2 Who did the boy write a text to?







3 Why is the girl late for school?







4 What happened to the boy at the ceremony?







5 What has the girl lost?







3 © 30 Choose the correct answers. Listen and check.

- 1 Have you all finished the first exercise?
 - a Yes, we are.
 - b Not quite, Sir.
 - c No, we didn't.
- 2 Did you manage to answer all the questions in the test?
 - a No, I didn't.
 - b Yes, we have.
 - c No, they aren't.
- 3 Could you lend me a pen, please?
 - a No, I don't.
 - b Yes, I have.
 - c Of course.
- 4 How long did you spend on your Maths homework?
 - a About an hour.
 - b No, I didn't spend any.
 - c For half an hour.



I can have a casual conversation.

1	Complete the questions	with
	the words below.	

are been do have was would

1 How have you been?

2 What ______ you guys doing this evening?

3 _______ you like it here?

4 How ______ your journey?

5 ______ you been to the USA before?

6 ______ you like to join us?

2 Choose the correct responses.

- 1 Have you been to London before?
 - a Yes, I did.
 - b I didn't go to London.
 - © No, it's my first time here.
- 2 Would you like to come out with us?
 - a I'd love to.
 - b No, I don't, thanks.
 - c Yes, I love it.
- 3 What are you doing at the weekend?
 - a I didn't enjoy it.
 - b I'm fine, thanks.
 - c I'm going to a party.
- 4 Do you like it here in New York?
 - a Thanks, that would be great.
 - b Yes, it's amazing.
 - c I'd love to.
- 5 How was your journey?
 - a It was fine.
 - b Sure thing.
 - c Not really.

3	Complete the dialogues with the	phrases
	below.	

OUT of class

Great to see you!	I'm shattered.
Let me introduce y	r ou. Tell me about it!

- 1 A: Who's that over there?
 - B: That's Liam. Let me introduce you. You'll get on well with him.
- 2 A: Hi, Rob.
 - B: Hi, Matt. You look well. Did you have a good holiday?
- 3 A: I've got loads of homework this week!
 - B: _____ I spent two hours on my Maths homework last night!
- 4 A: Hi, Jodie. How was your journey?
 - B: It was awful! The train was two hours late!
 - A: Well, never mind. You're here now, so you can relax.

4 31 Complete the dialogues with one word in each gap. Listen and check.

Listeri dila check.				
Elsa:	Hi, Rory.			
Rory:	Hi, Elsa, Great to ¹ see you! Come in.			

- Elsa: I'm sorry I'm a bit late.

 Rory: Oh, don't worry about that. How ²______your
- journey?

 Elsa: Not brilliant! The train was really crowded. I ³_______
 feeling really tired.
- Rory: Well, sit down and I'll get you a cup of tea.
- Rory: Thanks. Your room's nice. 4 you like it here?

 Yeah. The university's great and I've made lots of friends.

 How about you? 5 have you been?
- Elsa: Oh, fine. We all miss you back home, of course. I can't
 - wait to get away to college next year!

Later ...

- Elsa: It's nice to sit down!
- Rory: Yeah. I often come here for a snack.
- Elsa: It's nice. Ooh, that chocolate cake looks good.
- Rory: Oh, there's Tara a friend of mine. 6_____ me introduce you. Tara over here!
- Tara: Hi
- Rory: Tara, this is Elsa. She's a friend of mine from back home.
- Tara: Nice to meet you, Elsa. ⁷______ you been to Edinburgh before?
- Elsa: No, I haven't. But it's a lovely city.
- Tara: Yeah. I love it. So, what are you guys 8_____ this evening?
- Rory: We're going for a pizza. 9______ you like to join us?
- Tara: I'd love to. Thanks!



A letter giving information

I can write a letter giving information.

		9					
1		ad Ana's letter. Complete it with the ords below.					
		arriving looking meet thank will					
2		ad Fiona's reply. Match sentences 1–6 om Fiona's letter with functions a–f.					
	1	b It was good to hear from you.					
	2	Call me if you can't see us!					
	3	You wanted to know about my town.					
	4	There are lots of interesting old buildings.					
	5	We're going to have a great time!					
	6	See you soon!					
	a	ending your letter					
	b starting your letter						
	С						
	d						
	e giving useful information						
	f	making it clear why you're writing					
3		omplete Fiona's letter with the orrect phrases.					
		don't worry about if you like I'm looking forward to meeting you you're welcome to come along just in case					

4 Write a reply to Ana's letter in Exercise 1. Follow the instructions below.

- 1 Use Fiona's letter in Exercise 2 as a model.
- 2 Follow these steps:
 - Start your letter with a suitable phrase.
 - · Make it clear why you're writing.
 - · Answer all Ana's questions.
 - Give useful information about your town.
 - · Make arrangements to meet Ana.
 - Use a friendly phrase before you finish.
 - End your letter with a suitable phrase.

Hi Fiona,	
¹ Thank you for i	nviting me to come and visit you.
I'm ²	_ next Saturday evening. My plane
lands at 7.30.3_	you come and meet me
at the airport?	I'll wear my red coat so you can
see me easily.	<u>e</u>
I'm 4	forward to seeing your town.
Is it old or mode	ern? Are there lots of interesting
things to do? I	like visiting museums. Also, I love
shopping. Are t	here any good shopping centres in
your town?	
It will be good t	you at last.
Ana	

Hi Ana,	
It was good to hear from you.	
11'm looking forward to meeting you too.	
Yes, my mum's going to drive me to the airport	
to meet you. I'm sure I'll recognise you from your	
photo. My phone number is 07702 354276,	
there's a problem. Call me if you	
can't see us!	
You wanted to know about my town. Well, it's very	
old. There are lots of interesting old buildings and	
there's also a great museum about the history of	
the town. We can visit it while you're here	
3 I go to a drama class on Saturday	
mornings. 4 and join in. I'm glad you	
like shopping. There's a really big shopping centre	
in my town, with lots of amazing shops. I go there	
quite a lot - I love shopping too, so we'll definitely	
do that!	
5 anything. We're going to have a	
great time!	
See you soon!	
Fiona	





SELF-ASSESSMENT

For each learning objective, tick (/) the box that best matches your ability.

c = I understand and can help a friend.

= I understand but have some questions.

= I understand and can do it by myself.

(E) = I do not understand.

		\odot	0	8	88	Need help?	Now try
9.1	Vocabulary					Students' Book pp. 106-107 Workbook pp. 102-103	Ex. 1–3, p. 111
9.2	Grammar					Students' Book p. 108 Workbook p. 104	Ex. 4–5, p. 111
9.3	Reading					Students' Book p. 109 Workbook p. 105	
9.4	Grammar					Students' Book p. 110 Workbook p. 106	Ex. 6, p. 111
9.5	Listening					Students' Book p. 111 Workbook p. 107	
9.6	Speaking .					Students' Book p. 112 Workbook p. 108	Ex. 7, p. 111
9.7	Writing					Students' Book p. 113 Workbook p. 109	

- 9.1 I can talk about school life.
- 9.2 I can make questions with the correct word order.
- 9.3 I can find specific detail in an article and talk about intelligence.
- 9.4 I can use a variety of tenses.
- 9.5 I can identify specific information in a dialogue and talk about awkward moments.
- 9.6 I can have a casual conversation.
- 9.7 I can write a letter giving information.

What can you remember from this unit?

New words I learned (the words you most want to remember from this unit)	Expressions and phrases I liked (any expressions or phrases you think sound nice, useful or funny)	English I heard or read outside class (e.g. from websites, books, adverts, films, music)	

9.9

SELF-CHECK

Vocabulary

1	Match the words below	with	the
	definitions.		

ICT Literature Maths performance practical exam project

- 1 a school subject in which you learn about numbers
- 2 a test in which you make something rather than answer questions
- 3 a school subject in which you learn about computers _____
- 4 a situation in which you do something on a stage for other people to watch
- 5 a school subject in which you learn about novels, plays and poems
- 6 a piece of work in which you study and write about a topic in detail _____

2 Choose the correct option.

- 1 What's the best way to revise / memorise for exams?
- 2 You must *memorise / study* this number so that you can remember it.
- 3 We're studying / learning about plants in Biology at the moment.
- 4 You won't do well in your exams if you're lazy / creative.
- 5 Come and make / take a look at this picture.
- 6 You need to fill in / calm down this form.

3 Complete the sentences with the words below. There are two extra words.

critical general mess mistakes photography problem talented teamwork

- 1 Max is really good at _____ solving, so I'll ask him what we should do.
- 2 Simon doesn't like working on his own he prefers ______.
- No, I don't know the capital of Hungarymy _____ knowledge isn't very good.
- 4 We did some exercises to develop our thinking skills.
- 5 I made a lot of _____ in my English test, so I don't think I'll pass.
- 6 You won't do well at school if you _____ around in class.

Grammar

4	Complete the questions with the correct form of the
	verbs in brackets.

1		(your friends/go) shopping every
	weekend?	, , , , , , , ,
2		(you/finish) reading that book yet?
3		(why/Carrie/be) upset today?
4		(who/call) the police last night?
5		(who/you/see) at the cinema
	yesterday?	

5 Match answers a-e with questions 1-5 in Exercise 4.

а	Because she failed her Chemistry exam.
b	I saw Tim and Mel.
С	Yes, I have.
d	Yes, they do.
е	Marty called them.

6 Choose the correct option.

- 1 I play / I'm playing tennis every weekend.
- 2 Someone stole / was stealing my bike yesterday.
- 3 We walked / were walking home when we saw him.
- 4 The school became / has become very popular over the last few years.
- 5 Do yoga. It is helping / will help you to stay flexible.
- 6 The new term starts / is going to start in two weeks.

Speaking language practice

7 Complete the dialogues with the phrases below.

do you like have you been how have how was would you like what are

Α		
A:	Hi, Laura. Great to see you after so long!	
	you been?	
B:	Fine.	
A:	Your flat's really nice. 2	it
B:	Yes, I love it!	
В		

A:	Hi, nice to see you. 3	your journey?
B:	Not bad. Not too tiring.	
A:	Good. 4	_ to Manchester before?

C
A: Hi. ⁵______ you guys doing tonight?

B: No, I haven't. I'm looking forward to seeing it.

B:	We're	meeting some friends at the cinema
	6	to join us?

A: Thanks. I'd love to.

here?

	wo	ord f		e text.	ds a–f to make How many other e?				
	1	f	research	а	facts				
	2		memorise	b	your potential				
	3		take	С	it in turns				
	4		achieve	d	pictures				
	5		draw	е	the material				
	6		revise	f	the topic				
2	Complete the sentences with the word friends in Exercise 1. 1 If you are doing a project, it's a good idea to research the topic well. 2 Before an exam, you usually have to								
	2.57	to	research the to fore an exam, y	pic we	ell. ually have to				
	2	Bef cla Ou us	research the to fore an exam, y th ss. r teacher is ver	pic we ou usu at you y crea and r	ell. ually have to have studied in tive – she makes make models of				
	2	Bef cla Ou us the	research the to fore an exam, y th ss. r teacher is ver subject we are me teachers so	pic we rou usuat you at you are and restudy that	ell. ually have to have studied in tive – she makes make models of				
	3	to I Bef cla Ou us the Sor the We	research the to fore an exam, y th ss. r teacher is ver e subject we are me teachers so , tem.	pic we ou usu at you y crea and restudy y that out try	ell. ually have to have studied in tive – she makes make models of ving. you shouldn't just to understand ive presentations –				

3 Complete the text with the words below. There are two extra words.

potential positive academic alternative fascinating critical interactive

Adam has a very ¹positive attitude towards his school. He is a very practical person and he likes the fact that they spend less time on ² subjects. He realises that the system is ³ , but he prefers it to the traditional school model. For him, the ⁴ element is very important - he likes working together with others. He also likes the choice. For example, he spoke about a presentation he did on allergies, which was a ⁵ topic for him.

4 Match the phrases below with the photos. Write sentences in the Present Continuous. There are two extra phrases.

do martial arts shake hands stand in playground study Computer Science study English do Drama





The teacher is shaking hands with the student.

2





3

5 Choose the correct option.

- 1 At King's School the students have very *high*/ *little* expectations.
- 2 At King's School they teach a course in public / private speaking.
- 3 At Steiner schools the atmosphere is more informal / ordered.
- 4 Shapwick is a *private / formal* school for children with dyslexia.
- 5 Dyslexia can affect people's old-fashioned / short-term memory.

6	Complete	the	sentences	with	the	words	below.
---	----------	-----	-----------	------	-----	-------	--------

	atmosphere	discipline	fees	full-time	values
1	Some scho maintain, li				want to
2	If you want to pay	to go to a	privat	te school,	you have
3	King's Scho	ool prepare educe		dents for I	ife after
4	There is a c Steiner sch				the

5 At the King's School there is more emphasis

on ____ and obeying orders.

7 Read the video script. Underline any words or phrases you don't know and translate them into your language.

T

īwo very d	lifferent schools	
Part 1		
	Lunchtime over at King's and the playground becomes a parade ground.	
	King's opened as a free school in 2012 and now has 280 pupils in three year	
	groups. Each lesson begins with a handshake for the teacher and a statement	
	of the school's values. This brings a feeling of order and discipline to the class.	
	This is a Leadership class. The subject today is integrity.	,
nterviewer:	Wouldn't this time be better spent teaching the pupils Maths or English or	
	Science?	
leacher:	It's these kinds of lessons that enable the students to do as well as they do	
i Gaorioni	in subjects like Maths and English and Science because it teaches them	-22 101 -27
	'character'.	
Narrator:	All students at King's have to do martial arts.	
	The insistence on order and character-building will sound old-fashioned to	
inci vicirci i	some. Sa, is this a deliberate attempt to turn back the clock?	
Narrator:	They teach Latin and Public Speaking here, but they also teach Mandarin and	
Marrator.	Computer Science. The children are encouraged to have high expectations.	
Girl:	I want to be an investment banker and to do to go to Oxford University.	
	How old are you now?	
Girl:	I'm thirteen.	
Narrator:	The government also recognises the good work at King's school and hopes	
Nariator.	other schools will follow. At Kings, they believe they are doing something new:	
	preparing their students for life after full-time education.	MANAGEMENT TO THE PARTY OF THE
	The King's free school is very different from the Steiner school system.	
	Here, discipline and exams are not the priority and there is a very informal	
	atmosphere. Students don't wear a uniform and don't start academic studies	
	until they are seven. The focus is an creative play, music, drama and dance.	
	that they are seven. The focus is an elective play, master, around and admissi	
Part 2		
Narrator:	Another kind of alternative school is one that focuses an special needs. In the	
	UK there are fourteen schools which specialise in teaching dyslexic children. Our	
	reporter, Kara – a dyslexic herself, talks about her visit to one of these schools.	
Kara:	I'm really kind of excited about seeing a school that specialises in something	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	that I've had throughout my life.	
Narrator:	Shapwick is a private school with 170 boys and girls. The classes are very small,	
	so the teacher can focus on the needs of particular students. The first class that	
	Kara attends is an English lesson.	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
	Dyslexia doesn't just affect reading and spelling. It can also affect your short-	шиг
	term memory. Here, students learn new words by linking them to colours, shapes	
	and stories. This makes it easier for them to remember the new words. The	
	students are very hard-working.	
	Most dyslexic schoolchildren don't get this support. Schools like Shapwick are	
	expensive and many parents cannot afford the fees. However, some families are	
	given money by the government.	
	As part of their English lesson, the children spell out words with physical	
	movements. Here, they are using bottles of water. It helps the words to stay in	
	their long-term memory. Kara didn't have the chance to study this way when she	

was a girl, but she's very happy that now others can.

1 Look at the text in each question. What does it say? Choose the correct letter a, b or c.

Tip: Read each text carefully and think about its purpose and general meaning. Then read the three options and choose the one that matches.

Example:

Special offer today! Free ice cream with every pizza!

- a There is a special price for ice cream today.
- (b) When you buy a pizza, you can have an ice cream without paying.
- c Pizzas are free today.

No selfie sticks in the museum, except in the entrance hall

- a You can buy selfie sticks in the entrance hall.
- b You can't use selfie sticks anywhere in the museum.
- c You can use selfie sticks in the entrance hall, but nowhere else.
- Hi Tara! Can you lend me your phone charger?
 I can't find mine and I need to charge my
 phone. I can come and get it this afternoon
 if you're at home. I promise to return it
 tomorrow! Elsie
 - a Elsie is asking Tara to bring the charger to her house.
 - b Elsie wants to borrow Tara's charger.
 - **c** Elsie wants to come to Tara's house to use her charger.
- Danger risk of death or serious injury
 This part of the mountain is closed to skiers
 due to the risk of avalanches.
 - a You can't ski here because there's the possibility of an avalanche.
 - b Some skiers have already died or been injured on the mountain.
 - c People should be careful when they are skiing here because there has been an avalanche.

Tom,
It's my birthday party on Saturday.
I hope you haven't forgotten.
Come round at seven as we agreed.
Remember to bring my present!
Alan

Why has Alan written this note?

- a to invite Tom to his birthday party
- b to arrange with Tom what time he should come
- c to remind Tom about his party

PHONE MESSAGE

To: Paul From: The Pizza Place
The pizza restaurant phoned. They've made
a mistake with their bookings, so your table
is now for 7.30 p.m., not 7.00 p.m. Ring back if
the later time is a problem.

Paul should call the restaurant

- a to confirm that the new booking is OK.
- b if he isn't happy with the new booking.
- c to tell them about a mistake.
- 2 These people all want to find a place to eat. On the next page are descriptions of eight restaurants. Decide which restaurant (A–H) would be the most suitable for each person (1–5).

Tip: Read about each person carefully and underline the important points. Then read each description and find the one that matches all the important points.

- Becky is looking for somewhere to spend an evening with a big group of friends to celebrate her sixteenth birthday. She and her friends don't have much money, and three of them are vegetarians.
- Neil wants to take his wife out for a quiet evening meal to celebrate their tenth wedding anniversary. They both enjoy traditional well-cooked dishes. They don't particularly like spicy food.
- Jane is having a day shopping with some college friends and is looking for a place to stop off on the way home for a drink and a snack. She particularly likes sweet things.

- Helen wants to take her two ten-year-old nephews out for lunch for a birthday treat. They're very lively and they aren't happy unless they have something to do. They especially love computer games. They don't eat much and they're quite fussy eaters.
- Dan and his school friends want a quick lunch before they go to the cinema. They want something light and not expensive. The restaurant must be in the city centre so it's close to the cinema.

Restaurant guide

A Joe's Diner I

Definitely sells the best burgers in town. The steaks are great too, with delicious handmade chips. It's popular with students, although others might not like the loud music and bright lights. It isn't cheap and there isn't much choice unless you like steak or burgers! The portions are also too big for most people to finish.

B The Shed

Located twenty minutes from the city centre, this lunchtime-only restaurant is big and busy. You order your food on tablet computers at the table, which is fun, and you can play on the tablet while you wait for your food. There's plenty of choice and the menu is mix and match, so you can choose exactly what you want.

C Mexicana

Mexicana offers top quality Mexican and South American food in a relaxed atmosphere. The look is traditional, but the food is definitely modern, created by a chef who loves experimenting. The dishes are full of new and exciting flavours, most with a generous helping of chilli! Prices are high, and it's small, so you need to book well in advance.

D Pizza Plus I

A great value restaurant serving pizzas and pasta dishes which are tasty and not expensive. There's plenty of choice, including vegetable-only options. There's live music most nights and the restaurant, which is quite big, is usually full of young people, so there's often a real party atmosphere. The only problem is that the service can be slow.

E The Vegetable Garden

If you're looking for modern vegetarian cooking at its best, The Vegetable Garden is the restaurant for you. All the dishes use fresh local ingredients and many of the vegetables are grown in the restaurant's garden. There are tasty bean dishes and the noodles are fantastic! Prices are quite high and it's only open at lunch times.

F La Rustique

This small French restaurant is elegant and relaxing. The tables are arranged to give you a feeling of privacy and there's an excellent selection of well-known dishes from Coq au Vin to Boeuf Bourguignon - classic French food at its best. It's expensive, but it's well worth the money for a special occasion.

G Temptations I

This city centre café is open all day, serving drinks and snacks. There are some unusual drinks like strawberry lemonade, and there's an amazing range of fresh fruit juices too. The best thing is the delicious homemade cakes and ice creams - try the chocolate and coconut cake! Service can be a bit slow, but it's worth the wait!

H Dario's

This lively café is right in the city centre. The reasonable prices make it popular, especially with students and young people. The evening menu isn't particularly exciting, but at lunch time there's a great selection of tasty soups, fresh salads and some unusual sandwiches. Service is quick too.

3 Read the text and choose the correct letter (a, b, c or d) for each space.

Tip: Read the text through quickly for general meaning first. Then focus on each gap. Look carefully at the words before and after each gap and see which of the four options fits best.

WILD PLACES

More and more people now 1 visiting wild places for their holidays. Trips to hot deserts or 2 cold northern countries are becoming more and more popular. A lot of places that were 3 difficult to get to in the past are now only a plane ride away. Scientists too are studying the wild places of the world, hoping to 4 new and unusual plants and animals. Of course, tourists who visit these places 5 their best not to cause any damage



and they certainly don't 6______ to harm the natural world. They just want to experience the natural beauty of the places and take photos that they can 7______ with their friends. But is tourism killing these wild places that we love so much? They have remained in a natural state 8_____ thousands of years. Do we really 9_____ to change this and turn them into holiday resorts? So, before you 10_____ the decision to go to one of the world's wild places, maybe you should stop and think.

If you haven't been there 11_____ , maybe it's best to stay away.

Example:

1 a choose (b) enjoy c decide d hope d mild 2 a cool chilly **c** freezing b **c** absolutely d totally 3 a really completely b d find out **c** have **b** discover 4 a look d attempt 5 a make b put c do d enjoy 6 a realise b think **c** mean 7 a show **b** bring c upload d share d ago 8 a for b since c before d accept 9 a like **b** stand c want d make get c have 10 a do b d just 11 a never c ever b yet

4 For each question, complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Use no more than three words.

Tip: Read the first sentence carefully, to make sure you understand the meaning in detail. Then read the second sentence and think of another way of expressing the same meaning.

Exa	np	le:

- Mike phoned me a few second ago.
 Mike has just phoned me.
- 2 I'm happy to help with the cooking.
 I don't ______ helping with the cooking.
- 3 Martha can play tennis really well.

 Martha is really good ______ tennis.
- 4 This is the first time I've eaten pineapple ice cream.

 I've ______ pineapple ice cream before.
- 6 I'm afraid there's nothing for dessert.
 I'm afraid there isn't ______ for dessert
- 5 You borrowed your friend Sam's headphones, but you have lost them. Write an email to Sam. In your email, you should:
 - · apologise to Sam.
 - · explain to Sam where and when you lost them.
 - offer to buy Sam some new headphones.

Write 35-45 words.

Tip: You must include all the three points that are mentioned in the task.

6 Read the exam task. What two questions should you answer and how many words should you write?

This is part of a letter you receive from an English friend:

For a piece of homework, I have to find out about weather and natural disasters in another country. What's the weather like in your country? Have there been any natural disasters? Write and tell me!

Now write a letter answering your friend's questions. Write your letter in about 100 words.

7 Write the words below in the correct column.

autumn avalanche cloudy drought earthquake flood fog hurricane icy rainy snow spring storm summer sunny tsunami wind winter

Seasons	Weather nouns
autumn	######################################

Weather adjectives	Natural disasters
***************************************	***************************************

8 Match 1-6 with a-f to make sentences.

1 4	Let me know
2	Anyway, good luck with
3	Dear
4	Thanks for getting
5	Bye for

6 Great to hear

u	nom you.
b	how you get on with your
	homework.

homework.

d	your homework.
е	in touch.

- f Sam, ...
- PRead the sentences in Exercise 8 and decide if you would use them at the beginning (B) or end (E) of a letter.
- **10** Write your answer to the exam task in Exercise 6.

1 Look at the text in each question. What does it say? Choose the correct letter a, b or c.

Tip: All three options may use vocabulary from the text. Read each of the options very carefully to see which one exactly matches the purpose or meaning of the text.

Example:

Special offer today! Free ice cream with every pizza!

- a There is a special price for ice cream today.
- (b) When you buy a pizza, you can have an ice cream without paying.
- c Pizzas are free today.
- Hi Jan! Jamie has just texted me. He's got two tickets for *Mama Mia* next Saturday, but he can't go now, so he wants to sell them. Are you interested? If so, we have to let him know today. Sara

Sara and Jan need to

- a go to the theatre to buy tickets for Mama Mia.
- b tell Jamie if they have any tickets for Mama Mia.
- c tell Jamie if they want to buy his tickets for Mama Mia.

Ticket holders only

All fans must show their tickets at the gate to gain entry to the stadium. Our staff may also ask you for identification.

- a You can't buy a ticket unless you show some form of identification.
- **b** You need a ticket to get in and you might need to show some form of identification.
- c You can buy tickets at the gate.

Essay Competition

Subject: My best travel experience Entries must be no more than 400 words and must have an accompanying photo.

Closing date: 20 June

- a You have to write more than 400 words.
- b You have to send a photo and a piece of writing.
- c You don't have to send a photo with your essay.

5 Matt,

I left my football boots in the changing room after the match on Saturday. Are you going to the sports centre later? Could you see if they're there? I hope no one's taken them!

Why has Duncan written this note?

- a to ask Matt to look for his football boots
- b to ask if he can borrow Matt's football boots
- c to ask Matt if he has found his football boots

GUESTS SHOULD NOT LEAVE MONEY
OR VALUABLE ITEMS IN THEIR TENTS

YOU CAN LEAVE THESE ITEMS AT THE RECEPTION DESK FOR A SMALL CHARGE, BUT YOU MUST COLLECT THEM BEFORE 8 P.M.

WHEN THEY LEAVE THE CAMPSITE.

- a Guests must always take valuable items with them when they go off the campsite.
- **b** Guests can only collect their valuable items from the reception desk after 8 p.m.
- c Guests have to pay to leave valuable items at the reception desk.

2 Look at the sentences about a trip to India. Read the text to decide if each sentence is correct (C) or incorrect (I).

Tip: Read the sentences first, then read the text quickly for general meaning. Find the relevant part of the text for each sentence and read that part carefully to see if the sentence is correct or incorrect.

1		It was Jake's idea to go to India with his dad.
_	_	
2		Jake felt excited and
		slightly anxious before
		the holiday.
3		India didn't feel very
		different to Jake when
		he first arrived.
4		Jake preferred the
		hotel in Delhi to the
		one in Jaipur.
5		Jake became bored
		with visiting historic
		buildings in Jaipur.
6		Jake found the train
	-	journey to the south
		uncomfortable and
		disappointing.
7		According to Jake,
		travelling by car can
		be frightening at times.
8		Jake was annoyed that
	hound	he didn't see any tigers
		in the wildlife park.
9		Jake was glad that
	hamad	they ignored the
		warnings about food in
		the guidebook.
0		Jake and his dad said
•	hand	they would return to
		the first to the first to

India one day.

A trip to India

by Jake Davis

My dad has always wanted to go to India, but my mum has never been particularly interested in visiting the country. So last year my dad decided to take me there for a three-week holiday. Although I was looking forward to the trip, I was also a bit nervous about visiting a country with such a different culture.

We landed in Delhi and as we drove out of the airport, I could see immediately that it was not at all like home. The first thing that struck me was how many people there were – there were people everywhere, on bikes and motorbikes, pushing handcarts or walking with large bundles on their heads. Everywhere I turned, there were different sights, sounds and smells.

We spent two days exploring Delhi before moving on to Jaipur, a smaller city that is known for its famous pink-coloured buildings. I enjoyed our stay here in a typical Indian hotel. This was much nicer than the big international hotel where we had stayed in Delhi. I felt I was really in India now! We spent two days visiting monuments and palaces in and around Jaipur, which, although interesting at first, became less so after the fifth or sixth one!

After Jaipur, we took a long train journey south to Kerala in a train packed with people, animals and all kinds of goods. Travelling by train in India is definitely an interesting experience, but not as enjoyable as I expected, and the heat was almost unbearable. Travelling by car with an experienced local driver is much more enjoyable, although at times you want to close your eyes when your driver speeds past a red light, beeping his horn loudly to warn other traffic that he's coming!

In our final week we visited a large wildlife park. Although the advertisement promised us tigers, the closest we came to seeing one was a rather old-looking paw print on the ground. This didn't matter though, as we saw elephants and were lucky enough to spot a family of these animals in a river, the young ones splashing around playfully. This more than made up for the lack of tigers!

All in all, the holiday was a wonderful experience. The food was definitely one of the highlights. We enjoyed some wonderful hot snacks from food stalls by the side of the road, despite the advice in the guidebooks to only eat in hotels and restaurants. The other thing I will really remember from the trip is the kindness and warmth of the people. As Dad and I boarded the plane to come home, we promised ourselves that it wouldn't be the last time we would see this amazing country.

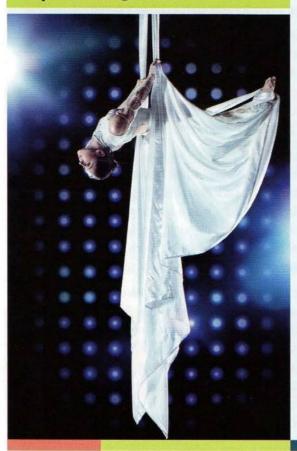
3 Read the text and questions below. For each question (1–5), choose the correct letter, a, b, c or d.

Tip: Read the whole text through for general meaning first. Some questions ask about details of the text, so you need to find the relevant part for each one and read it carefully. Some questions ask about the

writer's purpose or attitude. For these questions, think about the general meaning of the whole text.

The circus

by Emma Jenkins



People often ask me what it's like to be a circus performer. I grew up in a circus family, so I've always watched the performances and I never questioned the fact that I would grow up to be part of the show.

I decided when I was four years old that I wanted to be a trapeze artist with my cousins, flying through the air high above everyone's head. I wanted to start training immediately, but my parents thought I was too young. A year later, I was playing with my cousins and they showed me a few basic skills. They quickly saw that I was a natural performer, so they persuaded my parents to allow me to start training, even though I was still young.

Although I love performing and each day brings something different, it isn't all fun. For a start, we move to a new place every two weeks. This isn't as tiring as it sounds because we get time off to rest during the day, but it means that it isn't easy to meet new people and form friendships. Of course, our family members are also our friends, and it's great to train, perform and live with the same people.

I don't go to school, but my mum gives me lessons and I also study on my own. Although it's hard to find the time, I know that I need to be disciplined because it's just as important as my performing career. After all, I may need to find a different job one day.

I know that my life is unusual, and it was something I was born to, not something that I chose. I sometimes think about doing something different, but somehow the daily routine of training and performing is in my blood, and I find it impossible to think of anything I would enjoy more.

- 1 What is Emma trying to do in this text?
 - a persuade other people to become circus performers
 - b explain why she chose to join a circus
 - c suggest how to become a circus performer
 - d describe her life as a circus performer
- 2 Emma started training when
 - a she was four years old.
 - **b** her parents persuaded her that she was old enough.
 - c she realised she needed to learn some basic skills.
 - d her cousins saw how talented she was.

- 3 What does Emma not enjoy about her way of life?
 - a Travelling around a lot is very tiring.
 - b It's difficult to make new friends.
 - c It can be boring to do the same show every day.
 - d It can be difficult working and living with the same people.

- 4 How does Emma feel about her education?
 - a She doesn't think it's necessary for her to have an education.
 - b She would like to go to school to learn.
 - c She doesn't have much time for school work, but she knows it is necessary.
 - **d** She thinks it's more important to concentrate on her career in the circus.
- 5 What might Emma say about her life?
 - a 'I didn't really choose this life, but now I love it.'
 - b 'I would love to do something different if I had the choice.'
 - c 'I don't enjoy training, but I love performing.'
 - d 'It's impossible to enjoy this way of life all the time.'
- **4** For each question, complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Use no more than three words.

Tip: When you have written your answer, check that you have used no more than three words.

Example:

- Mike phoned me a few second ago.
 Mike has just phoned me.
- 2 Football is more exciting than tennis.

Tennis isn't _____football.

- 3 The water isn't warm enough to go swimming.
 The water _____ cold to go swimming.
- 4 We'll only go to watch the match if it's sunny.

 We won't go to watch the match _____ sur
- 5 We should book the tickets in advance.

We _____ to book the tickets in advance.

6 It's not possible that's our hotel!

That ____ our hotel!

- Your uncle has offered to buy you two tickets to a sports event for your birthday. Write a note to your friend Max. In your note, you should:
 - · tell Max what the event is.
 - · explain why it will be exciting.
 - · invite Max to come to the event with you.

Write 35-45 words.

Tip: Count your words when you have finished. You mustn't write more than 45 words. Remember to include all the three points that are mentioned in the task.

6 Read the exam task. Then look at questions a-f below, which will help you plan your story. Decide on the best order for the questions.

Your English teacher has asked you to write a story. This is the title for your story:

My first time on stage

Write your story in about 100 words.

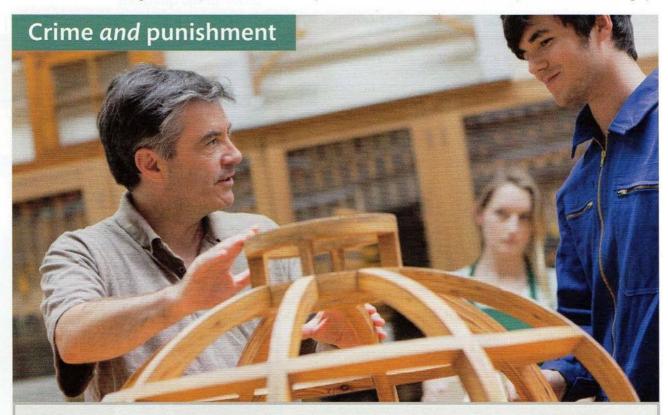
- What happened in the end?
- b How did you feel before you went on stage?
- c What happened next?
- d 1 When and where did your performance take place?
- e How did you feel afterwards?
- f What was the first thing that happened when you started performing?
- 7 Complete the sentences with the words below.

audience cast character costume lights performance

- 1 The *lights* suddenly went out when I started to sing.
- 2 The _____ clapped loudly at the end of the show.
- 3 The other members of the helped me.
- 4 My _____ didn't fit very well.
- 5 I was playing a very funny ____
- 6 In the end, I gave a good
- **8** Write your answer to the exam task in Exercise 6.

1 Read the text and choose the correct letter (a, b, c or d) for each space.

Tip: When you look at the four options for each gap, think about the meaning of each word. Also think about the words or grammar patterns it is usually used with. Then decide which option best fills the gap.



Societies have alway	ys found it difficult to 1	with the probl	em of young	criminals. In t	the past young
people who 2	crimes were often sent	to prison. Many jud	ges believed	that this was	the best way
to 3them	. They thought that if they di	dn't treat these you	ngsters sever	ely, they 4	never
change their ways. I	t is certainly true that if a yo	ung person 5	an old pe	erson, for exam	mple, they
should pay a price f	or this action. But the questi	on is whether the b	est solution i	s to send ther	n to prison,
6they wil	I meet and ⁷ out w	vith older, more exp	erienced crir	ninals.	
Many experts now l	pelieve it is important to help	young criminals to	88	changes to th	eir life, rather
than simply locking	them away. They say it is be	tter to help these yo	oung people	to ⁹	new skills. This
will help them to 10	a job in the future	and hopefully stay	away from c	rime. Of cours	se, someone
who has 11	their house burgled by a y	oung criminal may	not agree wit	h this gentle a	approach!

Example:

1	a	deal	b	solve	С	get on	d	fall out
2	а	made	b	committed	С	did	d	acted
3	a	hurt	b	catch	С	punish	d	arrest
4	a	will	b	can	С	must	d	would
5	а	steals	b	robs	С	breaks	d	damages
6	а	where	b	which	С	who	d	that
7	a	chat	b	discuss	С	hang	d	spend
8	a	do	b	get	С	take	d	make
9	а	learn	b	do	С	revise	d	memorise
10	а	go	b	get	С	take	d	win
11	a	watched	b	made	С	suffered	d	had

2	Look at the sentences about a TV show. Read the incorrect (I).	text to decide if each sentence is correct (C) or
	Tip: The sentences follow the same order as the text used in the sentences and the text.	xt, but different words and expressions may be
	1 Bethany learned about the TV show at school.	6 In a Science lesson, Bethany learned about how people first landed on
	2 Bethany decided to apply after talking	the moon.
	to Lou. 3 Bethany was disappointed because she	7 Bethany didn't enjoy the 1950s homework but she thinks it had some advantages.
	didn't learn much on the interview day. 4 Bethany didn't expect to get onto the	8 It took Bethany longer than usual to write her essays.
	show because there was a limited number of places.	9 Bethany loved the food in the 1950s school canteen.
	5 Staying quiet in classes was very difficult for Bethany.	Bethany thinks she will definitely continue to use the cooking skills she learned.

1950s School by Bethany Jones

Last year I saw an advert in a history magazine asking for young people to take part in a reality TV show called 1950s School. The idea was to take a group of young people and transport them back to a 1950s school so they could experience what school life was like for teenagers at that time. At first, I wasn't particularly keen, but my friend Lou thought it was a great idea and she persuaded me to put my name forward.

To apply, we had to write about ourselves and why we were interested in the show, and then have an interview with the programme's director. The interview day was fun. They told us a lot about what our lives would be like for three months if we were accepted, although, unfortunately, we didn't get an opportunity to look round the school. I was really excited, but I didn't want to get my hopes up because there were loads of people there and I knew they only wanted fifteen. I was amazed a week later when I received a letter saying that they wanted me to take part.

I was surprised at how different the lessons were to our lessons nowadays. The teachers were all really strict, and in lessons we had to just listen and take notes and not talk at all. That was really hard for me because I love chatting! In Physics, we learned about space but not much was known at that time because this was ten years before people landed on the moon. And, of course, lessons like ICT didn't exist at all in the 1950s.

I found the homework quite boring. At my school we do a lot of projects, which I love. But at the 1950s school we had to just memorise a lot of facts. I really didn't enjoy that but actually, it's quite useful now because I can tell you all the capital cities of Europe! One of the hardest things was writing essays. I usually use my laptop for writing and I'm quite fast at typing, but it took me ages to write everything by hand.

One good thing was the school meals. I usually take sandwiches to eat at lunchtime, but in the 1950s all schools served hot meals at lunchtime. It was fun sitting eating with all the others in the canteen, although the food wasn't brilliant! The best part of the whole experience for me was the Cooking lessons. It was strange because only the girls learned Cooking, while the boys practised making things out of wood. But I loved learning how to make bread and cakes. That's one thing from the past that I'll definitely do more of in the future!

3 These people are all working on a project about their ideal school. Below are descriptions of eight schools. Decide which school (A–H) would be the most suitable for each person (1–5).

Tip: Each person mentions two or three important points. Some of these points may be mentioned in more than one description, but only one description matches all the points.

- Abbie wants to get good exam results so she can go to university. She would prefer small classes, with extra help for subjects she finds difficult. She is especially interested in History and would like to go to a boarding school.
- 2 Frank is very sporty and enjoys being physically active. He does very well in a teamwork environment. He sometimes finds it difficult to concentrate if lessons are too long.
- 3 Louise is very creative and enjoys lessons such as art and drama. She learns best through doing things, rather than through studying with books. She would like opportunities to be involved in performances at school.
- Jamie doesn't like memorising lots of facts. He's interested in learning how to think for himself and learning skills that will be useful to him in his future working life. He doesn't want to go to a boarding school.
- 5 Paula is interested in lots of different subjects and enjoys exploring topics in a lot of detail. She's confident and hardworking and enjoys working alone. She enjoys helping younger children to learn.

Schools

A Grange Hill School

At Grange Hill School we believe in a modern approach to education, and our focus is on learning to learn rather than just taking in facts. We therefore offer lessons in critical thinking skills and problem solving, as well as practical subjects such as ICT, which will enable our students to succeed once they leave school and start their careers.

B King Edwards Academy

At King Edwards Academy we know that our traditional teaching methods work because our students achieve excellent exam results. Students are taught in large classes and there are regular tests to check their progress. At the same time, many of our students are creative, so we offer a range of after-school clubs where students can enjoy music and art activities.

C Mill Street School

We believe that it's important to educate the mind and body at the same time. Our school day starts with exercise and lessons are kept short to allow frequent breaks for students. Students are encouraged to work in groups and discuss their learning. The school has excellent sports facilities and all students are encouraged to take part.

D Helpton High School

Our belief is that students work best when they're studying things they're interested in. Our timetable allows plenty of free time for students, when they can work independently on projects they have chosen themselves. Older students have the opportunity to work with teachers and provide support for students just starting at the school.

E Queen Anne's School

Our students get great results, and over ninety percent continue their studies when they leave school. Teaching is done in small groups and, because students live at the school during term time, there is plenty of time for them to meet teachers in the evening if they need extra help. There are frequent trips to museums and other places of interest.

F Paston School

Paston School is a small community school with a friendly atmosphere. We specialise in teaching practical skills such as cooking and gardening, along with all the traditional school subjects. We believe that students learn best if they are calm and happy, so every day starts with a yoga and relaxation class.

G Bridgeport Academy

At Bridgeport Academy we believe that imagination, rather than memorising facts, is the key to successful learning. Our students do a lot of practical work and we encourage them to express themselves and use their own ideas. The school has its own art gallery and an excellent Drama department.

H Elmswood School

Elmswood School is a specialist science and technology school. Although lessons are taught in all subjects, there is a special emphasis on Maths, Science subjects and ICT. We are a boarding school with accommodation for about 800 students. Many of our students go on to become successful scientists or engineers.

1 Miles when ad use or favore and area

EXAM	THE - 3 R Y	
#	THE R P L T	A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR
# may . W = W A / A	THE R S A V.	A S matter

4 For each question, complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Use no more than three words.

Tip: When you have written your answer, read both sentences again carefully to check that they have exactly the same meaning. Remember to check that you have used no more than three words.

Example:

1	Mike prioried me a few second ago.
	Mike has just phoned me.
2	I lived in this house when I was younger.
	This is the lived when I was younger.
3	You should call the police immediately.
	If I were call the police immediately.
4	The police caught the burglars.
	The burglars the police.
5	Someone stole my bike yesterday.
	I had yesterday.
6	Who was your piano teacher?
	Who to play the piano?

- You are going to take part in a cycle race, but your bike was stolen. Write a note to your friend Rob. In your note, you should:
 - · explain when and where your bike was stolen.
 - · ask to borrow Rob's bike.
 - · say when you will need it.

Write 35-45 words.

Tip: Use informal language to make your note sound friendly. Remember to include all the three points that are mentioned and to count your words when you have finished.

6 Read the exam task. Then look at ideas a−h below about your best friend. Tick (✓) the five ideas that are relevant to the topic of the letter.

This is part of a letter you receive from an English friend:

I've just read a book about best friends. Tell me about your best friend. How long have you been friends and how did you meet? What interests do you share?

Now write a letter answering your friend's questions. Write your letter in about 100 words.

	Wri	te your letter in about 100 words.
a		his/her life before I knew him/her
b	1	where and when I first met him/her
С		what we were doing when we first met
d		his/her personality
е		other members of his/her family
f		his/her house or flat
g		a hobby or activity that we both like
h		why we get on well together

7 Complete sentences and phrases 1–6 with the words below. Then answer questions a–c.

asked best heer soon
thank wanted

1 It was good to hear from you.
2 You ______ to know about my
best friend.
3 All the _____,
4 You ____ about my best
friend.
5 See you _____,
6 ____ you for your letter.
Which two sentences/phrases:
a are used to start a letter? 1,
b make it clear why you're writing?
c are used to end a letter? _____

8 Read the exam task. Then look at questions 1–6, which will help you plan your story. Complete the questions with the phrases below.

> did Tom do next the end the first thing was Tom feeling when he arrived

Your English teacher has asked you to write a story. Your story must begin with this sentence:

Tom was feeling happy as he walked to school.

Write your story in about 100 words.

1	Why was Tom feeling happy?
2	What was that happened as he was walking along?
3	What when this happened?
4	What happened ?
5	What happened in ?
6	How did Tom feelat school?

Write your answer to one of the exam tasks in Exercises 6 and 8.

Unit 1

Exercise 1

1 charger 2 selfie-stick 3 share 4 download 5 awful 6 perfect

Exercise 2

1 twice 2 useful 3 ugly 4 made 5 break 6 evening

Exercise 3

1 am chatting 2 don't often watch 3 lives 4 don't like 5 isn't raining 6 doesn't want

Exercise 4

1 Do you often read, don't 2 Is Jamie listening, is 3 Do you think, do 4 Are your friends making, are 5 Are you doing, 'm not 6 Do your friends always remember, don't

Exercise 5

1 being 2 to pay 3 to listen 4 to stay up 5 waiting 6 to go

Exercise 6

1 Shall 2 idea 3 could 4 sure 5 Why 6 not 7 what 8 not 9 Let

Unit 2

Exercise 1

1 sunny 2 wind 3 foggy 4 mild 5 freezing 6 degrees 7 flood 8 earthquake

Exercise 2

1 leaves 2 path 3 make 4 discovered 5 really 6 absolutely

Exercise 3

1 stayed 2 didn't see 3 went 4 took 5 didn't want 6 Did, have

Exercise 4

1 wasn't watching 2 was swimming 3 weren't chatting 4 Was the sun shining, was

5 Were the bears sleeping, weren't

Exercise 5

1 saw, was walking 2 were skiing, happened 3 watched, were staying 4 was sitting, got

5 were watching, when

Exercise 6

1 c 2 b 3 a 4 b

Exercise 7

1 Why did you do that? 2 I didn't realise

3 I didn't mean to 4 I really wanted

5 be more careful

Unit 3

Exercise 1

1 garlic 2 cream 3 nuts 4 cheese 5 honey 6 flour

Exercise 2

1 building 2 contestant 3 win 4 do 5 make 6 do 7 delicious 8 fresh

Exercise 3

1 hasn't started yet 2 Have you ever tried 3 have just finished 4 have never seen

5 Has it stopped raining yet

Exercise 4

1 c 2 b 3 a 4 c

Exercise 5

1 for 2 since 3 since 4 for

Exercise 6

1 have visited 2 didn't go 3 enjoyed 4 has opened 5 wrote, hasn't replied 6 have never had, tried

Exercise 7

1 Nearly 2 Could I have 3 Of course 4 Would you like 5 Thank you

Unit 4

Exercise 1

1 sci-fi 2 cartoon 3 performance 4 character 5 hit 6 audience

Exercise 2

1 vacation 2 toilet 3 dance 4 life 5 party 6 cake

Exercise 3

1 more popular than 2 were too 3 the tallest 4 as expensive as 5 the best play 6 old enough to

Exercise 4

1 many 2 lots of 3 any 4 much 5 few 6 little

Exercise 5

1 well 2 early 3 quietly 4 angrily 5 fast 6 late

Exercise 6

1 I'd rather 2 it sounds 3 Where would you rather 4 I'd prefer 5 Which would you prefer 6 very scary

Unit 5

Exercise 1

1 basketball 2 diving 3 snowboarding 4 yoga 5 ice-skating 6 climbing

Exercise 2

1 pitch 2 kit 3 fans 4 score 5 do 6 have 7 player 8 practise 9 take

Exercise 3

1 opens 2 'll win 3 's going to score 4 'm going to take up 5 'm meeting 6 'll pay

Evercise 4

1 'll get, take up 2 don't practise, won't get 3 won't win, run 4 rains, 'll play 5 'll arrive, is

Exercise 5

1 S 2 D 3 D 4 S

Exercise 6

1 up to 2 Nothing much 3 What about 4 don't know 5 got any plans 6 First 7 Then 8 your plans

Unit 6

Exercise 1

1 platform 2 ticket 3 trip 4 cruise 5 break 6 camp

Exercise 2

1 reservation 2 view 3 double 4 sunglasses 5 torch 6 guidebook 7 journey 8 travel

Exercise 3

1 f 2 i 3 b 4 c 5 e 6 h

Exercise 4

1 a 2 b 3 a 4 b 5 b 6 a

Exercise 5

1 didn't catch, What I asked 2 first part, I said that 3 say that again, just saying

Unit 7

Exercise 1

1 b 2 f 3 c 4 e 5 a 6 d

Exercise 2

1 hang 2 out 3 put 4 sense 5 havin 7 got 8 has

Exercise 3

1 spent, would get 2 would go, was/were travel 4 would talk, were 5 would do, liv

Exercise 4

1 who 2 where 3 who 4 which 5 tha

Exercise 5

1 grandmother, who is seventy-six, is still ve

2 uncle, who is a doctor, works at the main

3 , where my cousins live, is on the

4 bike, which he got for his birthday, is real

5 suggested going to the pizza restaurant they do

Exercise 6

1 up to 2 a laugh 3 Who's that boy 4 5 tall one 6 at the back 7 She's wearin

Unit 8

Exercise 1

1 shoplifter 2 fine 3 jail 4 vandal 5

Exercise 2

1 climbed 2 robbing 3 committed 4 5 broke 6 escape

Exercise 3

1 solve 2 fingerprints 3 arrest 4 with 5 clue 6 suspect

Exercise 4

1 are used 2 was arrested 3 was found

Exercise 5

1 We need to get our TV repaired. 2 I ha 3 Shall we get a pizza delivered? 4 He's suit made.

Exercise 6

2 incorrect 3 impossible 4 unusual

Exercise 7

1 don't know 2 fine 3 try 4 OK 5 w 6 suppose 7 sure

Unit 9

Exercise 1

1 Maths 2 practical exam 3 ICT 4 p 5 Literature 6 project

Exercise 2

1 revise 2 memorise 3 learning 4 la 5 take 6 fill in

Exercise 3

1 problem 2 teamwork 3 general 4 5 mistakes 6 mess

Exercise 4

1 Do your friends go 2 Have you finished 3 Why is Carrie 4 Who called 5 Who c

Exercise 5

a 3 b 5 c 2 d 1 e 4

Exercise 6

1 I play 2 stole 3 were walking 4 ha 5 will help 6 starts

Exercise 7

1 How have 2 Do you like 3 How was 4 Have you been 5 What are 6 Would

Experience English Experience the Wider World

Wider World is the portal to a fascinating world of English language knowledge and skills for the 21st century learner. The combination of authentic and engaging videos from the BBC with Pearson's **ELT** expertise gives teenage learners everything they need to achieve their goals in the wider world.

AUTHENTIC

Humorous drama, intriguing BBC Culture and Vox Pop videos provide inspiring content and motivate students to use English as it is really spoken.

INTERACTIVE

Numerous opportunities for interaction with real-life content across print and digital formats allow students to develop their language skills at a deeper cognitive level.

RELIABLE

Thoroughly researched and challenging content delivered within the 'Assessment for Learning' principles improves students' chances for exam success.

Find more information at

pearsonELT.com/widerworld

COURSE LEVEL	CEFR	GSE	PTE GENERAL	CAMBRIDGE
Wider World 0	<ai ai<="" td=""><td>10-25</td><td>Level A1</td><td></td></ai>	10-25	Level A1	
Wider World I	AI/A2	22-34	CeverAi	
Wider World 2	A2/A2+	32-42	Level I	Key for Schools
Wider World 3	A2+/B1	40-50	Level 2	Parlianian for Calcula
Wider World 4	BI/BI+	45-55	Level 2	Preliminary for Schools

STUDENTS' PACKS

OPTION 1: CLASSIC



OPTION 2: BLENDED



Students' Book with MyEnglishLab and Extra Online Homework

EXAM PRACTICE BOOKS

Pearson Test of English General A1 Pearson Test of English General Level 1 Pearson Test of English General Level 2 Cambridge Key for Schools **Cambridge Preliminary for Schools**

COMPONENTS

Students' Book

Students' Book with MyEnglishLab and Extra Online Homework

Students' eText

Workbook with Extra Online Homework

Teacher's Book with DVD-ROM

Teacher's Resources Book

ActiveTeach

Class Audio CDs

Exam Practice Books

